



**Stellenbosch**  
UNIVERSITY  
IYUNIVESITHI  
UNIVERSITEIT

**2026**

# **AgriSciences**

Academic programmes  
and faculty information

**Yearbook, Part 7**

## Accuracy, liability and changes

- Stellenbosch University has taken reasonable care to ensure that the information provided in the Yearbook parts is as accurate and complete as possible.
- Please note, however, that the University's Council and Senate accept no liability for any incorrect information in the Yearbook parts.
- The University reserves the right to change the Yearbook parts at any time when necessary.

## The division of the Yearbook

- The Yearbook is divided into 13 parts.
- Part 1, 2 and 3 of the Yearbook contain general information applicable to all students. Make sure that you understand all provisions in Part 1 (General Rules) of the Yearbook that are applicable to you.
- Part 4 to 13 of the Yearbook are the Faculty Yearbook parts.

Part	Yearbook
Part 1	General Rules
Part 2	Bursaries and Loans
Part 3	Student Fees
Part 4	Arts and Social Sciences
Part 5	Science
Part 6	Education
Part 7	AgriSciences
Part 8	Law
Part 9	Theology
Part 10	Economic and Management Sciences
Part 11	Engineering
Part 12	Medicine and Health Sciences
Part 13	Military Science

## Availability of the Yearbook parts

- The electronic versions of the Yearbook parts are available at [www.su.ac.za/yearbooks](http://www.su.ac.za/yearbooks).
- Part 1 to 12 are available in both English and Afrikaans. Military Science (Part 13) is only available in English.

# Table of Contents

<b>How to use this Yearbook part .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Prospective undergraduate students.....	1
1.2 Prospective postgraduate students .....	1
1.3 Registered undergraduate students .....	1
1.4 Registered postgraduate students.....	2
<b>General information .....</b>	<b>3</b>
1. History, structure and mission of the Faculty of AgriSciences .....	3
1.1 History .....	3
1.2 Functions.....	3
1.3 Structure.....	3
1.4 Vision and mission.....	3
2. Teaching, research and social impact .....	4
2.1 Teaching.....	4
2.2 Research.....	4
2.3 Social impact.....	4
3. How to communicate with the Faculty .....	4
3.1 Contact details of the Faculty of AgriSciences.....	4
3.2 Physical address and contact details of the Dean's Office .....	5
3.3 Contact details of departments.....	5
3.4 Contact details of the AgriSciences Student Association.....	6
4. How to communicate with the University.....	6
4.1 Prospective students .....	6
4.2 Current or former Stellenbosch University students.....	6
4.3 Contact details of the University.....	7
5. Language at the University .....	7
6. Qualifications offered in the Faculty of AgriSciences .....	7
6.1 Plant and Soil Sciences .....	7
6.2 Food Production Systems .....	7
6.3 Grapevine and Wine Sciences.....	8
6.4 Animal Production Systems.....	8
6.5 Agricultural Economics and Management .....	8
6.6 Forestry and Wood Sciences .....	8
6.7 Conservation Ecology.....	8
6.8 Agricultural Production and Management .....	9
6.9 Interdisciplinary BDatSci programme.....	9
6.10 Multidisciplinary MSc (Sustainable Agriculture) programme.....	9
6.11 Bioinformatics and Computational Biology.....	9
7. Profile of the graduates of the Faculty of AgriSciences.....	9
8. Standing rules for Dean's Concession Assessments (DCAs) .....	10
9. Assessment.....	10
10. Information on admission, registration, accommodation, interruption of studies and assessment regulations.....	10
11. Agriculture and Forestry in South Africa.....	10

<b>Undergraduate programmes.....</b>	<b>12</b>
1. Instructional programmes and fields of study.....	12
2. Undergraduate enrolment management .....	13
3. Admission.....	13
3.1 School-leaving qualifications.....	13
3.2 Minimum admission requirements for the Faculty's degree programmes .....	13
3.3 Admission to the extended curriculum programme (ECP) .....	14
4. Compulsory module for first-year students .....	16
5. Bachelor's programmes.....	16
5.1 Plant and Soil Sciences .....	16
5.1.1 BScAgric (Plant and Soil Sciences) Focal area: Crop Production Systems with Agronomy, Horticultural Science or Grapevine Sciences in combination with Entomology, Genetics, Plant Pathology or Agricultural Economics.....	17
5.1.2 BScAgric (Plant and Soil Sciences) Focal area: Crop Production Systems with Agronomy, Agricultural Economics and Animal Science.....	21
5.1.3 BScAgric (Plant and Soil Sciences) Focal area: Crop Protection and Breeding with Plant Pathology and Entomology or Genetics .....	22
5.1.4 BScAgric (Plant and Soil Sciences) Focal area: Soil and Water Management with Soil Science and one of Agronomy, Horticultural Science or Grapevine Sciences .....	24
5.2 Food Production Systems .....	27
5.2.1 BSc (Food Science).....	27
5.3 Wine Production Systems .....	28
5.3.1 BScAgric (Viticulture and Oenology) .....	29
5.4 Animal Production Systems.....	30
5.4.1 BScAgric (Animal Science) .....	31
5.5 Agricultural Economics.....	32
5.5.1 BAgric (Agri-business Management).....	33
5.5.2 BScAgric (Agricultural Economics) Focal area: Agricultural Economic Analysis.....	34
5.5.3 BScAgric (Agricultural Economics) Focal area: Agricultural Economic Analysis and Management.....	35
5.5.4 BScAgric (Agricultural Economics) Focal area: Agricultural Economic Analysis and Management with Food Science .....	38
5.5.5 BScAgric (Agricultural Economics) Focal area: Agricultural Economics with Food Science.....	40
5.6 Forestry and Wood Sciences.....	42
5.6.1 BSc (Forestry) (Forestry and Wood Sciences) Focal area: Forestry and Natural Resources Sciences .....	44
5.6.2 BSc (Forestry) (Forestry and Wood Sciences) Focal area: Wood and Wood Products Sciences .....	45
5.7 Conservation Ecology .....	46
5.7.1 BSc (Conservation Ecology).....	46
5.8 Agricultural Production and Management (Elsenburg).....	48
5.8.1 BAgric.....	48
5.9 Interdisciplinary BDatSci programme.....	48
5.9.1 BDatSci.....	48

<b>Postgraduate programmes .....</b>	<b>52</b>
1. Summary of postgraduate programmes .....	52
2. General information on the postgraduate programmes.....	52
2.1 Postgraduate diploma programmes.....	52
2.2 Honours programmes .....	52
2.3 Master's programmes.....	53
2.4 PhD or PhD (Agric) degree programmes.....	53
3. Provisions regarding enrolment for programmes .....	54

3.1	Periods of enrolment for master's and doctoral studies .....	54
3.2	Continued enrolment during the maximum period of enrolment.....	54
3.3	Continued enrolment after the maximum period of enrolment .....	54
<b>4.</b>	<b>Postgraduate programmes per department.....</b>	<b>54</b>
4.1	Department of Agricultural Economics.....	54
4.1.1	BAGricHons (Agri-business Management) .....	54
4.1.2	MAGric in Agri-business Management.....	56
4.1.3	MScAgric in Agricultural Economics and Management .....	56
4.1.4	PhD in Agricultural Economics and Management or PhD (Agric).....	57
4.2	Department of Agronomy .....	58
4.2.1	Postgraduate Diploma in Agronomy .....	58
4.2.2	MScAgric in Agronomy .....	59
4.2.3	MSc (Agric).....	60
4.2.4	PhD in Agronomy or PhD (Agric).....	61
4.3	Department of Animal Sciences .....	61
4.3.1	Postgraduate Diploma in Aquaculture .....	61
4.3.2	MScAgric in Animal Science.....	62
4.3.3	PhD in Animal Production Systems or PhD (Agric) .....	63
4.4	Department of Conservation Ecology .....	64
4.4.1	Programmes in Conservation Ecology .....	64
4.4.1.1	MSc in Conservation Ecology.....	64
4.4.1.2	PhD with specialisation in Conservation Ecology or PhD (Agric).....	64
4.4.2	Programmes in Entomology .....	65
4.4.2.1	MSc or MScAgric in Entomology .....	65
4.4.2.2	PhD in Entomology or PhD (Agric) .....	65
4.4.3	Programmes in Nematology.....	66
4.4.3.1	MSc or MScAgric in Nematology .....	66
4.4.3.2	PhD in Nematology or PhD (Agric).....	66
4.5	Department of Food Science.....	67
4.5.1	MSc in Food Science.....	67
4.5.2	MSc in Food and Nutrition Security.....	68
4.5.3	PhD in Food Science .....	69
4.6	Department of Forest and Wood Science .....	70
4.6.1	Postgraduate Diploma in Forestry and Wood Sciences .....	70
4.6.2	Programmes in Forestry and Wood Sciences.....	71
4.6.2.1	MSc in Forestry and Natural Resource Sciences or Wood and Wood Products Sciences.....	71
4.6.2.2	PhD in Forestry and Wood Sciences or PhD (Agric).....	71
4.7	Department of Genetics.....	72
4.7.1	Programmes in Genetics.....	72
4.7.1.1	BScHons in Genetics.....	72
4.7.1.2	MScAgric in Genetics.....	73
4.7.1.3	MSc in Genetics .....	74
4.7.1.4	PhD in Genetics or PhD (Agric).....	74
4.7.2	Programmes in Plant Biotechnology .....	75
4.7.2.1	BScHons in Plant Biotechnology.....	75
4.7.2.2	MSc in Plant Biotechnology .....	76
4.7.2.3	PhD in Plant Biotechnology .....	76
4.8	Department of Horticultural Science .....	77
4.8.1	BScHons in Applied Plant Physiology.....	77
4.8.2	MScAgric in Horticultural Science.....	78

4.8.3 PhD in Horticultural Science or PhD (Agric) .....	79
4.9 Department of Plant Pathology .....	79
4.9.1 BScHons in Plant Pathology .....	79
4.9.2 MSc or MScAgric in Plant Pathology .....	80
4.9.3 PhD in Plant Pathology or PhD (Agric) .....	81
4.10 Department of Soil Science .....	81
4.10.1 MScAgric in Soil Science .....	81
4.10.2 MSc (Agric) .....	82
4.10.3 PhD in Soil Science or PhD (Agric) .....	83
4.11 Department of Viticulture and Oenology .....	83
4.11.1 Programmes in Oenology .....	83
4.11.1.1 MScAgric in Oenology .....	83
4.11.1.2 PhD in Oenology or PhD (Agric) .....	84
4.11.2 Programmes in Viticulture .....	84
4.11.2.1 MScAgric in Viticulture .....	84
4.11.2.2 PhD in Viticulture or PhD (Agric) .....	85
4.11.3 Programmes in Wine Biotechnology .....	86
4.11.3.1 BScHons in Wine Biotechnology .....	86
4.11.3.2 MScAgric or MSc in Wine Biotechnology .....	87
4.11.3.3 PhD in Wine Biotechnology or PhD (Agric) .....	87
4.11.4 MSc (Agric) .....	88
<b>5. Multidisciplinary postgraduate programmes .....</b>	<b>89</b>
5.1 Programmes in Sustainable Agriculture .....	89
5.1.1 MSc (Sustainable Agriculture) .....	89
5.2 Centre for Bioinformatics and Computational Biology .....	90
5.2.1 MSc in Bioinformatics and Computational Biology .....	90
5.2.2 PhD in Bioinformatics and Computational Biology .....	90
5.2.3 Structured MSc in Bioinformatics of Infectious Diseases and Pathogen Genomics .....	91
<b>Subjects, modules and module contents .....</b>	<b>93</b>
1. Definitions and explanations of important terms .....	93
2. Prerequisite pass, prerequisite and corequisite modules .....	94
3. Subjects, modules and module contents .....	94
<b>Research and service bodies .....</b>	<b>173</b>
1. The South African Grape and Wine Research Institute (SAGWRI) at Stellenbosch University .....	173
2. Institute for Plant Breeding and Biotechnology (IPBB) .....	173
3. Experimental Farms .....	174
3.1 Welgevallen .....	174
3.2 Mariendahl .....	174
<b>Alphabetical subject list .....</b>	<b>176</b>

# How to use this Yearbook part

This section gives you guidelines for finding particular information in the different chapters in this Yearbook part. Consult the table of contents for the page numbers of the chapters referred to below.

## 1. Where to find information

### 1.1 Prospective undergraduate students

- General Information chapter contains information about:
  - Communication with the Faculty and the University, which includes an explanation of the concepts "application number" and "student number" as well as relevant contact details where you can refer important enquiries to;
  - The University's Language Policy and Plan; and
  - The degree programmes that you can enrol for and the qualifications that you can obtain.
- Undergraduate Programmes chapter contains information about:
  - The Faculty's undergraduate study programmes;
  - The process of enrolment management, which entails selection for admission to programmes of study;
  - The minimum admission requirements for the various study programmes; and
  - The subjects and modules that must be taken per academic year for the different study programmes, with choices where applicable.
- Subjects, Modules and Module Contents chapter contains:
  - An explanation of subjects as opposed to modules;
  - An explanation of the different digits used for the numbering of modules in the Undergraduate Programmes chapter; and
  - Definitions of prerequisite pass, prerequisite and corequisite modules.
- Alphabetical list of subjects is available in the back of this Yearbook part.

### 1.2 Prospective postgraduate students

- General Information chapter contains information about:
  - Communication with the Faculty and the University, which includes an explanation of the concept "student number" as well as relevant contact details where you can refer important enquiries to; and
  - The University's Language Policy and Plan.
- Postgraduate Programmes chapter contains information about:
  - The Faculty's postgraduate study programmes;
  - The minimum admission requirements for the various study programmes;
  - Specific closing dates for applications, and other relevant information, for example selection for admission; and
  - The subjects and modules that must be taken per academic year for the different study programmes, with choices where applicable.
- Subjects, Modules and Module Contents chapter contains:
  - An explanation of subjects as opposed to modules; and
  - An explanation of the different digits used for the numbering of modules in the Postgraduate Programmes chapter.
- Alphabetical list of subjects is available in the back of this Yearbook part.

### 1.3 Registered undergraduate students

- General Information chapter contains information about:
  - Communication with the Faculty and the University with relevant contact details where you can refer important enquiries to;
  - The University's Language Policy and Plan; and
  - The granting of Dean's Concession Examinations to final-year students.
- Undergraduate Programmes chapter contains information about:
  - The Faculty's undergraduate study programmes; and

- The subjects and modules that must be taken per academic year for the different study programmes, with choices where applicable.
- Subjects, Modules and Module Contents chapter contains:
  - An explanation of subjects as opposed to modules;
  - An explanation of the different digits used for the numbering of modules in the Undergraduate Programmes chapter;
  - The abbreviations and definitions used for the teaching loads of individual modules;
  - An indication at each module of what its teaching load is;
  - Definitions of prerequisite pass, prerequisite and corequisite modules, as well as an indication at each module which of the requisites apply to it, if any; and
  - How individual modules are assessed.
- Alphabetical list of subjects is available in the back of this Yearbook part.

## 1.4 Registered postgraduate students

- Postgraduate Programmes chapter contains information about:
  - The Faculty's postgraduate study programmes; and
  - The subjects and modules that must be taken per academic year for the different study programmes, with choices where applicable.
- Subjects, Modules and Module Contents chapter contains:
  - An explanation of subjects as opposed to modules; and
  - An explanation of the different digits used for the numbering of modules in the Postgraduate Programmes chapter.
- Alphabetical list of subjects is available in the back of this Yearbook part.



# General information

## 1. History, structure and mission of the Faculty of AgriSciences

### 1.1 History

When SU was officially established in 1918, Agriculture was one of the first four faculties and right from the outset it made an indelible contribution to agricultural education and research in South Africa. In 2006 the Faculties of Agriculture and Forestry merged to become the Faculty of AgriSciences. The Faculty of AgriSciences at Stellenbosch University is held in high esteem at national and international levels for the quality of our training and research and also as consultant in the agricultural and forestry industry.

### 1.2 Functions

Some of the challenges facing the present-day agricultural and forestry industries are the creation of employment and entrepreneurial opportunities, the provision of sufficient high-quality food, and sufficient plant and animal fibre at affordable prices. These opportunities and challenges are further influenced by the diversity of our country's topography, soil varieties, variable climate, limited water resources and the stricter requirements that selective consumers are constantly setting for agricultural and forestry produce. Furthermore, we have to practice agriculture and forestry in harmony with nature to without exploiting natural resources. Our country has a large variety of animal and plant life that, while agricultural and forestry activities are being carried out, must be respected, protected and conserved to ensure that the quality of life of all South Africans is improved.

### 1.3 Structure

The Faculty consists of 11 departments, which are:

- Agricultural Economics;
- Agronomy;
- Animal Sciences;
- Conservation Ecology and Entomology;
- Food Science;
- Forest and Wood Science;
- Genetics;
- Horticultural Science;
- Plant Pathology;
- Soil Science; and
- Viticulture and Oenology.

The Faculty has two institutes, which are:

- South African Grape and Wine Research Institute
- The Institute for Plant Breeding and Biotechnology

The Faculty has two experimental farms, Welgevallen and Mariendahl. The farms managed by the Faculty of AgriSciences, are mainly utilised for training at undergraduate level as well as for postgraduate projects by postgraduates and staff members.

### 1.4 Vision and mission

The vision of the Faculty of AgriSciences is international excellence with wide acknowledgement of the depth and relevance of our research, the exceptional quality of our education, and the usefulness of our service to agriculture and forestry.

Our mission is to be the preferred provider of world-class research, education and service to agriculture and forestry in southern Africa. We strive to use our knowledge, expertise and skills to the benefit of South Africa and the region, of its people and its industries, and of our clients in a manner that ensures the sustainable use of the region's natural, physical and social resources.

To this end:

- our research forms a seamless continuum, from pioneering fundamental investigations, through market-driven applied research, to relevant technology development and transfer aimed at practical implementation;
- we ensure, through our modern, high-quality methods of learning and teaching and inspired by our research successes, that our students are the first choice of employers, that they are known as the

shapers of opinion, and that they are ready to step into leadership roles whether locally or internationally;

- we provide a one-stop service to industries and clients;
- we work together in strategic alliances; and
- every staff member is multi-skilled and of world-class standard.

## **2. Teaching, research and social impact**

The Faculty of AgriSciences plays an important role in continuously advancing and improving agricultural and forestry productivity in South Africa while ensuring that natural resources are protected and used sustainably. We strive to supply the agricultural and forestry sectors with excellent research, top tuition and world class service. Consequently, the Faculty is one of the most important institutions which addresses the growing challenges to agriculture and forestry in its fields of study and research, and tries to find solutions.

South Africa has an exceptional variety of fauna and flora which is respected, protected and conserved in all agricultural and forestry practises. Therefore, it is also the Faculty's purpose to ethically and scientifically align the application and management of living organisms by means of training, research and community involvement. In doing so the quality of life of everyone in the country is improved.

### **2.1 Teaching**

Our undergraduate and postgraduate programmes prepare students to act as competitive leaders and managers in the various sectors of both agriculture and forestry. The Faculty focuses on creating opportunities where all students can develop their full potential. This is done by researching and using the most suitable methods of teaching to encourage students to obtain all facets of the graduate qualities. The Faculty works closely with other support divisions to ensure success on undergraduate level, including additional tutor support, integration of information and communication technologies in the teaching and learning process. Interpreting services are also offered in certain areas.

### **2.2 Research**

Agriculture and forestry are faced with many challenges to supply the increasing world population with sufficient quality, safe food and fibre and to manage these industries in a meaningful way. The Faculty of AgriSciences is fully aware of this responsibility and enthusiastically accepts these challenges. Accordingly, we aspire to provide excellent research in each of our departments to ensure the agricultural industry's progress and success.

The Faculty now has four government-funded South African Research Chairs Initiative chairs (the purpose of which is to boost research and innovation capacity of universities), in post-harvest technology, plant biotechnology, meat science and wine biotechnology. In addition, the accelerated outputs achieved in conservation ecology, food science, animal sciences and plant pathology are testimony to the Faculty's advances in both traditional and emerging fields of study.

This increased postgraduate emphasis has resulted in unprecedented numbers of master's and PhD graduates.

### **2.3 Social impact**

The Faculty of AgriSciences is committed to the burning questions and development challenges of the present time and pays much attention to community interaction initiatives. These initiatives relate to poverty alleviation, food security, biodiversity, sustainability, the rural economy, postharvest technology, pests and diseases, water management, food processing, rural development and agribusiness.

We continuously extend our global network of collaboration to more universities and research institutes in various African countries and the East, where our academic interests continue to grow.

## **3. How to communicate with the Faculty**

### **3.1 Contact details of the Faculty of AgriSciences**

Direct specific enquiries related to the Faculty to the following address:

The Dean

Faculty of AgriSciences

Stellenbosch University

Private Bag X1

Stellenbosch

7599

## 3.2 Physical address and contact details of the Dean's Office

### Dean's physical address

Room 1027  
JS Marais Building  
Victoria Street  
Stellenbosch

### Contact persons and details

Staff	Telephone number	E-mail address
<b>Dean</b> Prof K Dzama	021 808 4737	deanagri@sun.ac.za
<b>Vice-Dean: Learning and Teaching</b> Prof M du Toit	021 808 3772	mdt@sun.ac.za
<b>Vice-Dean: Research, Innovation and Postgraduate Studies</b> Prof K Esler	021 808 4005	kje@sun.ac.za
<b>Personal Assistant</b> Ms K Vergeer	021 808 4792	ccav@sun.ac.za
<b>Director: Faculty Management</b> Dr M-J Freeborough	021 808 4802	mfree@sun.ac.za
<b>Coordinator: Academic and Student Affairs</b> Dr N Brown	021 808 2015	nbro@sun.ac.za
<b>Undergraduate Recruitment and Marketing</b> Mrs M Basson	021 808 2978	mh@sun.ac.za
<b>Digital Marketing and Communications Officer</b> Ms P Canham	021 808 9047	pcanham@sun.ac.za
<b>Academic Coordinator</b> Ms K Wirth	021 808 9304	wirthk@sun.ac.za
<b>Faculty Administrator</b> Mr E van Zyl	021 808 9305	erik@sun.ac.za

For more information on the Faculty of AgriSciences, visit us at [www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri](http://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri).

## 3.3 Contact details of departments

Department	Telephone number	E-mail address	Web page
<b>Agricultural Economics</b> Prof A Jooste	021 808 4899	joostea@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://agricultural-economics.sun.ac.za/">https://agricultural-economics.sun.ac.za/</a>
<b>Agronomy</b> Prof PA Swanepoel	021 808 4668	pieterswanepoel@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://agronomy.sun.ac.za/">https://agronomy.sun.ac.za/</a>
<b>Animal Sciences</b> Dr JHC van Zyl	021 808 4746	brinkvz@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://animal-science.sun.ac.za/">https://animal-science.sun.ac.za/</a>
<b>Conservation Ecology and Entomology</b> Prof F Roets	021 808 2635	fr@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/conservation-ecology">https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/conservation-ecology</a>
<b>Food Science</b> Prof GO Sigge	021 808 3581	gos@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/food-science">https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/food-science</a>

Department	Telephone number	E-mail address	Web page
<b>Forest and Wood Science</b> Prof B Talbot	021 808 3293	bruce@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://forest-and-wood-science.sun.ac.za/">https://forest-and-wood-science.sun.ac.za/</a>
<b>Genetics</b> Prof C Rhode	021 808 5834	clintr@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://genetics.sun.ac.za/">https://genetics.sun.ac.za/</a>
<b>Horticultural Science</b> Dr EM Crouch	021 808 4763	elke@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/horticulture">https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/horticulture</a>
<b>Plant Pathology</b> Prof L Mostert	021 808 3397	lmost@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://plant-pathology.sun.ac.za/">https://plant-pathology.sun.ac.za/</a>
<b>Soil Science</b> Prof C Clarke	021 808 3659	cdowding@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/soil-science">https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/soil-science</a>
<b>Viticulture and Oenology</b> Dr AE Strever	021 808 4545	aestr@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://viticulture-oenology.sun.ac.za/">https://viticulture-oenology.sun.ac.za/</a>
<b>Institute for Plant Breeding and Biotechnology (part of Dept of Genetics)</b> Dr S Peters	021 808 3836	swpeters@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://genetics.sun.ac.za/institute-of-plant-biotechnology/">https://genetics.sun.ac.za/institute-of-plant-biotechnology/</a>
<b>South African Grape and Wine Research Institute (part of Dept of Viticulture &amp; Oenology)</b> Prof MA Vivier	021 808 3773	mav@sun.ac.za	<a href="https://sagwri.sun.ac.za/">https://sagwri.sun.ac.za/</a>

### 3.4 Contact details of the AgriSciences Student Association

The AgriSciences Students Association (ASA) is an association for students in agricultural or forestry sciences of Stellenbosch University. The association strives to promote both your academic and social interests. It achieves these goals by representing you on faculty and other academic bodies and committees within the University.

The ASA welcomes you to the Faculty of AgriSciences. Contact us at [asa@sun.ac.za](mailto:asa@sun.ac.za).

## 4. How to communicate with the University

### 4.1 Prospective students

- The University allocates an application number to you (for example APP/1234567) when you apply to study at the University.
- The application number is a unique number to identify you and to simplify future communication with the University regarding all your programme applications in a given year.
- Use your application number every time you communicate with the University.

### 4.2 Current or former Stellenbosch University students

- The University allocates a student number to you when you apply to study at the University.
- The student number is a unique number to identify you and to simplify future communication with the University.
- Use your student number every time you communicate with the University.

## 4.3 Contact details of the University

You can send enquiries regarding your studies, bursaries and loans, and residence placements to the following address:

The Registrar  
Stellenbosch University  
Private Bag X1  
Stellenbosch  
7599

You can send enquiries regarding finances and services, including services at University residences, to the following address:

The Chief Operating Officer  
Stellenbosch University  
Private Bag X1  
Stellenbosch  
7599

Visit the University's website at [www.su.ac.za](http://www.su.ac.za), phone 021 808 9111, or send an email to [info@sun.ac.za](mailto:info@sun.ac.za).

## 5. Language at the University

Stellenbosch University (SU) is committed to engagement with knowledge in a diverse society and through the Language Policy aims to increase equitable access to SU for all students and staff. Multilingualism is promoted as an important differentiating characteristic of SU. Afrikaans, English and isiXhosa are used in academic, administrative, professional and social contexts. Pedagogically sound teaching and learning are facilitated by means of Afrikaans and English.

More information concerning language at SU is available on the website <https://www.su.ac.za/en/about/multilingualism>.

## 6. Qualifications offered in the Faculty of AgriSciences

You can obtain the following qualifications in the Faculty of AgriSciences. Consult the chapters "Undergraduate Programmes" and "Postgraduate Programmes" for more information regarding your specific programme.

### 6.1 Plant and Soil Sciences

Programme	Qualification
Bachelor's programme in Plant and Soil Sciences	BScAgric
Postgraduate Diploma in Agronomy	PgDip (Agronomy)
Honours programme in Applied Plant Physiology	BScHons
Honours programme in Plant Pathology	BScHons
Master's programme in Entomology or Plant Pathology	MSc
Master's programme in Agronomy, Genetics, Horticultural Science, Soil Science or Viticulture	MScAgric
PhD programme in Agronomy, Entomology, Genetics, Horticultural Science, Plant Pathology, Soil Science or Viticulture	PhD or PhD (Agric)

### 6.2 Food Production Systems

Programmes	Qualifications
Bachelor's programme in Food Production Systems	BSc Food Sc
Master's programme in Food Production Systems	MSc Food Sc
MSc in Food and Nutrition Security	MSc (Food and Nutrition Security)
PhD programme in Food Production Systems	PhD

## 6.3 Wine Production Systems

Programmes	Qualifications
Bachelor's programme in Grapevine and Wine Sciences	BScAgric
Honours programme in Wine Production Systems	BScHons (Wine Biotechnology)
Master's programme in Wine Production Systems	MSc or MScAgric (Wine Biotechnology) or MScAgric (Oenology or Viticulture) or MSc (Agric)
PhD programme in Wine Production Systems	PhD (Oenology, Viticulture or Wine Biotechnology) or PhD (Agric)

## 6.4 Animal Production Systems

Programmes	Qualifications
Bachelor's programme in Animal Production Systems	BScAgric
Postgraduate Diploma in Aquaculture	PgDip (Aquaculture)
Master's programme in Animal Production Systems	MScAgric
PhD programme in Animal Production Systems	PhD or PhD (Agric)

## 6.5 Agricultural Economics and Management

Programmes	Qualifications
Bachelor's programme in Agricultural Economics and Management	BScAgric or BAgric (Agri-business Management)
Honours programme in Agri-business Management	BAgricHons
Master's programme in Agricultural Economics and Management	MScAgric or MAgric
PhD programme in Agricultural Economics and Management	PhD or PhD (Agric)

## 6.6 Forestry and Wood Sciences

Programmes	Qualifications
Bachelor's programme in Forestry and Wood Sciences	BScFor
Postgraduate Diploma in Forestry and Wood Sciences	PgDip (Forestry and Wood Sciences)
Master's programme in Forestry and Wood Sciences	MScFor
PhD programme in Forestry and Wood Sciences	PhD (For) or PhD (Agric)

## 6.7 Conservation Ecology

Programmes	Qualifications
Bachelor's programme in Conservation Ecology	BScConsEcol
Master's programme in Conservation Ecology	MScConsEcol
PhD programme in Conservation Ecology	PhD (ConsEcol) or PhD (Agric)
Master's programme in Entomology	MSc or MScAgric
PhD programme in Entomology	PhD or PhD (Agric)

## 6.8 Agricultural Production and Management

Programme	Qualification
Bachelor's programme in Agricultural Production and Management	BAgric

On the basis of a co-operation agreement between Stellenbosch University and the Western Cape Provincial Government, the Bachelor's programme in Agricultural Production and Management (BAgric) is presented by the Elsenburg Agricultural Training Institute on the Elsenburg Campus. For all information about this programme contact the Institute directly at 021 808 5451 or visit their website at [www.elsenburg.com](http://www.elsenburg.com).

\*Please note: The BAgric (Agri-business Management) programme is offered at Stellenbosch University.

## 6.9 Interdisciplinary BDatSci programme

Programme	Qualification
Bachelor's programme in Data Science	BDatSci

## 6.10 Multidisciplinary MSc (Sustainable Agriculture) programme

Programme	Qualification
Master's programme in Sustainable Agriculture	MSc (Sustainable Agriculture)

## 6.11 Bioinformatics and Computational Biology

Programme	Qualification
Master's programme in Bioinformatics and Computational Biology	MSc
PhD programme in Bioinformatics and Computational Biology	PhD
Master's programme in Bioinformatics of Infectious Diseases and Pathogen Genomics	MSc

# 7. Profile of the graduates of the Faculty of AgriSciences

As one of our graduates you are a scientist who has the necessary knowledge, skills and disposition to function optimally, whether independently or in team context, in a scientific agricultural or agriculturally related environment. This means that you will be able to implement the relevant sciences sensibly in the chain to provide a variety of food and fibre products in an economical, environmentally friendly and sustainable manner so as to promote the progress and welfare of humanity.

In order to fulfil these requirements, you will display the below-mentioned professional characteristics as a graduate. It means that you:

### Knowledge

- Possess the necessary knowledge of the applicable sciences, and understand the interaction between biological and abiotic factors in the environment and the basic principles of research methodology.
- Possess the ability to create new knowledge, generate ideas and act innovatively.
- Possess the ability to function efficiently in an interdisciplinary environment.
- Understand sustainable development and sustainable resource management.
- Make knowledgeable decisions on the basis of proven information.
- Follow a systems approach in the analysis of and approach to environmental problems.

### Skills

- Possess the ability to gather knowledge, integrate it, interpret and apply it and to think and act in a problem-solving manner.
- Communicate effectively with role players from different environments and backgrounds.
- Possess sufficient skills to function as scientists, whether independently or in team context.
- Can interpret and utilise relevant subject literature.
- Possess the ability to efficiently utilise suitable resources and means in the working environment.



## Attitude and disposition

- Show respect for the environment and those who use it.
- Acknowledge the limitations of your own knowledge and skills.
- Have a positive disposition to continuous professional development.
- Are involved in and provide a service to the broader community.
- Set a positive example with regard to social responsibilities and obligations.
- Accept and strive for the highest standards of knowledge.

## 8. Standing rules for Dean's Concession Assessments (DCAs)

Please refer to the Part 1 (General Rules) of the Yearbook, Section 7, for the rules pertaining to the Dean's Concession Assessments (DCAs).

## 9. Assessment

- 9.1 The general assessment provisions that apply to modules and programmes are available in Yearbook Part 1 (General Rules). Please take note of these important provisions.
- 9.2 You can find the test and/or assessment dates in the module guides available on SunLearn.
- 9.3 Tests take place during the normal lecture or practical periods. No scheduled test may take place during the last two weeks of the formal class contact time of a semester (just before the A2 period).
- 9.4 Tests are scheduled so that they do not coincide with the mid-semester tests of other faculties.

## 10. Information on admission, registration, accommodation, interruption of studies and assessment regulations

For further information on admission and registration of students, accommodation, interruption of studies, and regulations in regard to University assessments, rules dealing with postgraduate qualifications, and/or recognition of degrees, consult Part 1 (General Rules) of the Yearbook.

## 11. Agriculture and Forestry in South Africa

### 11.1 Agriculture

In South Africa agriculture provides in people's basic needs for food and fibre. Agriculture contributes about 2% to the gross domestic product and it is an important earner of foreign exchange. Furthermore, it is a large employer; 5% of formal job opportunities. Agro-tourism is becoming increasingly important as an industry and provides recreational opportunities to many city dwellers. For every R1 million increase in the demand for agricultural produce, 83 new job opportunities are created, compared to only 29 such opportunities in the rest of the economy. It is generally acknowledged that agriculture plays an important role in poverty relief.

Soil is an important production factor in agriculture and forestry. South Africa covers 122,3 million hectares, of which approximately 102,8 million ha, about 84%, are used for agriculture and forestry. Of this, about 16 million ha are used for crop production, about 1,3 million ha are planted with trees. Natural pastures cover approximately 83 million ha, most of which is found in semi-desert areas. Soils with optimal physical and chemical conditions are scarce and localised, although there are various unique soil/climate combinations that make the provision of products for niche markets possible.

South Africa has a shortage of water. About 30% of South Africa receives less than 250 mm of rain a year, about 34% receives between 250 and 500 mm, 25% between 500 and 750 mm, and only 11% of the country has a rainfall of more than 750 mm a year. Rainfall over large parts of the country is uncertain, and periodic droughts occur regularly. Because of these and other factors, South Africa is largely dependent for its water supply on reservoirs and subterranean water sources. Slightly more than 1,2 million ha is under irrigation. Agriculture is currently still the main user of water, about 50%, but there is increasing pressure on agriculture to release more water for industrial and domestic use. Only 10% of agricultural land can be utilised without irrigation. The management of forestry plantations in water catchment areas has to follow strict guidelines. Water and irrigation management therefore requires particular expertise.

South Africa is still pre-eminently an agricultural country. Because of our varied climate and topography we can grow almost any crop. We are presently in the fortunate position of being self-sufficient in most primary food and fibre products for the population of the country. Types of food in which the country is at present not self-sufficient are wheat, oilseed, rice, tea and coffee. More than 33% of the total value of horticultural production is exported. Of this, pome fruit makes up the largest volume. Other examples of South African



exports are subtropical fruit, maize, sugar, vegetables, wine, cut flowers, flower bulbs, mohair and karakul pelts. Eighty-one per cent of agricultural land is under natural pasture that is used mainly for extensive stock-farming. This is almost 70% of the total land surface of South Africa. Stock-farming is carried out with a variety of animals, including cattle, pigs, sheep, goats and poultry. Aquaculture is a rapidly growing industry with considerable potential.

Besides the production of fresh produce, other important value-adding activities are postharvest operations, product manufacture, food processing, storage and preservation. The quality of the product enjoyed by the consumer is dependent on sound management of soil, crops and herds. Careful and responsible pest and disease management is therefore also required.

## 11.2 Forestry

South Africa has beautiful forests and some of the tree species are used for timber that compares favourably with the best in the world. Unfortunately, our forests of indigenous trees are limited, and many years ago it was found necessary to plant tree species from other parts of the world. The demand for timber shows a steady increase. To meet the need for timber, and to ensure adequate timber resources for the future, production from the current 1,3 million ha of afforested area must be expanded by establishing new forests or by increasing the current level of production from existing forests.

When trees reach maturity, they must be harvested. This facet of the forestry industry is complex, especially where trees are growing on steep mountain slopes. Road systems must be planned in detail and expensive harvesting equipment must be acquired and used efficiently.

The processing of the timber is the next step in the value chain. This can be done either at a sawmill, where it is sawn, seasoned and graded, ready to be used in building or furniture, at a paper mill, or at some other plant for processing into chips or fibre. Forests do not only meet our timber needs, they also provide outdoor recreational facilities. The need for forests and parks is becoming increasingly important, especially with the current population growth. The majority of forestry areas are accessible to the public. The wider field of conservation ecology addresses this aspect, for example through the conservation of fauna and flora and the management of the natural environment for its aesthetic and scientific importance. Trees also play an important role in rural and urban areas for the production of firewood, bark, medicine and ornaments, thereby enhancing the general quality of life.

Seen against this background, it is obvious that special knowledge, skills and management expertise are required for sustainable agricultural and forestry production. Our wide range of teaching programmes covers, therefore, all aspects of natural resource management, plant and animal production, postharvest operations and economic management, from the basic science, through to the practical and economic aspects of the respective value chains of agriculture and forestry.

Graduates in agriculture and forestry can follow a variety of careers in plant or animal production, conservation, processing and marketing. There are, for example, careers in research, teaching, consultation, information dissemination, farm management, environment management and industrial plant management (cellars, food factories and sawmills). Professions and careers such as these are not only practised in agricultural and forestry companies, but also in associated industries, commercial enterprises and government departments. Our graduates enjoy high regard in the domestic and international labour market.

# Undergraduate programmes

## 1. Instructional programmes and fields of study

The Faculty's instructional programmes train you in one of seven industry sectors, namely:

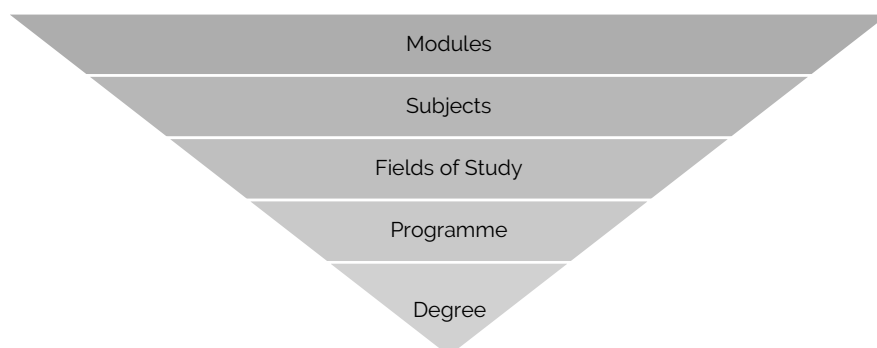
- Plant and Soil Sciences;
- Animal Production Systems;
- Food Production Systems;
- Wine Production Systems;
- Agricultural Economics and Management;
- Forestry and Wood Sciences; and
- Conservation Ecology.

You must first select one of the seven abovementioned instructional programmes. Each instructional programme consists of various field of studies from which you must make a choice. Each field of study consist of a number of specific modules; a module is a predetermined study unit.

The modules in each of the instructional programmes are grouped in such a way that they contain all the information needed to ensure comprehensive training within a particular field of the selected programme. Each instructional programme consists of various fields of study which give you the opportunity to make a refined choice within the broader programme. These fields of study are related but each one forms a specialisation within the training programme as a whole.

The field of specialisation is determined by the combination of major subjects selected for each field of study. You will study basic scientific principles ever more deeply from the first year of the programme, to culminate in the final year of study into two major subjects. This provides you with some specialist training (for a specific career) within the more general training provided by the programme as a whole (for a more general career).

Thanks to the general formative nature of the instructional programme, when you obtain a bachelor's degree you are equipped to achieve success in any career relating to agriculture or forestry. The following scheme represents the hierarchy from modules to a degree:



After obtaining your bachelor's degree you can proceed with an honours, master's or doctoral degree in one of the specialisation fields of the broader instructional programmes. After obtaining these qualifications you are able to enter the labour market as a specialist in your field.

The first year of all study fields (with the exception of the BAgriC (Agri-business Management) and BScAgric (Agricultural Economic Analysis and Management) programmes) is taken mainly in the Faculty of Science and/or Engineering. Different combinations of the modules are required for each study field and/or programme. Your specific combination is given in your specific study programme later in this chapter.

From the second year of study, you join your selected study programme offered mainly in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

In the case of the BAgriC (Agri-business Management) and BScAgric (Agricultural Economic Analysis and Management) programmes, you join the programme in the first year which is mainly offered in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

## 2. Undergraduate enrolment management

In order to meet the targets of Council with regard to the total number of students and the fields of study and diversity profile of the student body of Stellenbosch University, it is necessary to manage the undergraduate enrolments at Stellenbosch University. The University's total number of enrolments is not only managed to accommodate its available capacity, but we are committed to the advancement of diversity.

The University's undergraduate enrolment is managed within the framework of the national higher education system. We strive toward a well-grounded cohesion between national and institutional goals, respecting important principles such as institutional autonomy, academic freedom and public responsibility. The following points of departure apply:

- High academic standards are maintained for the expansion of academic excellence
- The University attempts to maintain and continuously improve high success rates.
- The University is committed to rectification, social responsibility and training future role models from all population groups.
- The University strives to expand access to higher education especially for students from educationally disadvantaged and economically needy backgrounds who possess the academic potential to successfully study at the University.

Please note that, due to the limited availability of places and the strategic and purposeful management of enrolments, you will not be automatically admitted to Stellenbosch University even if you meet the minimum requirements of your chosen programme. You can find more details about the selection procedures and admission requirements for undergraduate programmes in this chapter, on the Faculty's website at [www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri](http://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri) and at [www.maties.com](http://www.maties.com).

## 3. Admission requirements

### 3.1 School-leaving qualifications

- For admission to the University you need:
  - A National Senior Certificate (NSC) or school-leaving certificate from the Independent Examination Board as certified by Umalusi with admission to bachelor's (which requires that you obtain a mark of at least 4 (50-59%) in each of four designated university admission subjects); or
  - A university exemption certificate issued by the South African Matriculation Board to students with other school qualifications.

### 3.2 Minimum admission requirements for the Faculty's degree programmes

- In addition to the school-leaving qualifications in 3.1, the admission requirements for the programmes **BScAgric**, **BScFor (focal area Forestry and Natural Resources Sciences)**, **BScConsEcol**, **BSc Food Sc** and **BAgric (Agri-business Management)** are as follows:
  - An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
  - English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
  - Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
  - Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).
- In addition to the school-leaving qualifications in 3.1, the admission requirements for the field of study **BScFor (focal area Wood and Wood Products Science)** are:
  - An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
  - English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
  - Mathematics – 6 (70%); and
  - Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 5 (60%).
- In addition to the school-leaving qualifications in 3.1, the admission requirements for the field of study **BAgric (Agricultural Production and Management)** are:
  - English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
  - Mathematics – 4 (50%) OR Mathematical Literacy – 5 (60%);
  - Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%); OR
  - Life Sciences – 4 (50%); OR
  - Agricultural Sciences – 4 (50%).

### 3.3 Admission to the extended curriculum programme (ECP)

#### Background

The extended curriculum programme (ECP) was introduced to assist students with proven potential but without adequate schooling in mastering their degree programmes. An additional year of study is added to a mainstream degree programme to form an ECP. During this extra year you will receive additional academic support as preparation for specific mainstream subjects and for university studies in general.

In all fields of study in the Faculty of AgriSciences except *Agri-business Management* and *Agricultural Economic Analysis and Management*, the ECP includes an additional year of study before you start the first year of study of your chosen mainstream degree programme. The curriculum of this additional year is specifically designed to provide you with additional academic support and to facilitate the transition between school and university. You must pass all the modules of this year to gain admission to the first year of the mainstream programme.

For the ECP in the fields of study *Agri-business Management* and *Agricultural Economic Analysis and Management* the first year of the mainstream degree programme is spread over two years, with the addition of the following compulsory modules: Introduction to Economics 141; Financial Accounting 179 and Mathematics for Economic and Management Sciences 171. You must pass all prescribed modules for these two years to gain admission to the second year of the mainstream programme.

Even if you have been admitted to a mainstream programme you can apply for admission to your programme's ECP. Based on your school results and/or the results of any assessment or test, including the NBTs, prescribed by the University, you may be advised or compelled by the Faculty to follow the ECP route.

#### Minimum admission requirements for the ECP in BScAgric, BScFor, BScConsEcol and BAgri (Agri-business Management)

- The minimum admission requirements for the ECP in the programmes BScAgric, BScFor (focal area Forestry and Natural Resource Management), BScConsEcol and BAgri (Agri-business Management):
  - An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
  - English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
  - Mathematics – 4 (between 55% and 59,9%) **AND** Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%)**OR**
  - Mathematics – 5 (60%) **AND** Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 3 (between 45% and 49,5%).
- The minimum admission requirements for the ECP in BScFor (focal area Wood and Wood Products Sciences):
  - An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
  - English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
  - Mathematics – 5 (between 60% and 69,9%);
  - Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (between 55% and 59,9%); and

All necessary information on the structure and curriculum of the ECP will be supplied to you if you want to or are required to register for the ECP. You can also obtain the information from Client Services at 021 808 9111.

#### First-year curriculum for the ECP in BScAgric, BScFor and BScConsEcol

#### FIRST YEAR (146 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory modules

Biology	146(16)
Chemistry	176(32)
Computer Skills	176(8)
Physics	176(32)
Scientific Communication Skills	116(12), 146(6)
University Practice in the Natural Sciences	176(8)

and

Mathematics (Bio)	176(32) <b>OR</b>
Mathematics	186(32)

First-year curriculum for the ECP in BScFor with focal area: Wood and Wood Products Sciences

## **FIRST YEAR (146 CREDITS)**

### **Compulsory modules**

Chemistry	176(32)
Computer Skills	176(8)
Mathematics	186(32)
Physics	176(32)
Scientific Communication Skills	116(12), 146(6)
Preparatory Technical Drawings	146(16)
University Practice in the Natural Sciences	176(8)

Take note of the following:

- During the first year of the programme your knowledge base will be strengthened, and your skills will be developed to prepare you to enter the mainstream modules from your second year of study.
- Class attendance is compulsory, and you must pass all modules in Year 1 to proceed to the next year of study.
- You cannot repeat modules from the first year in your second year of study. This means that poor class attendance or failing one or more modules in Year 1 will result in you not being readmitted to the extended curriculum programme.
- If you complete this degree programme successfully, you will receive a degree certificate from the University that is exactly the same as those received by mainstream students.

First-year curriculum for the ECP in BScAgric (Agricultural Economic Analysis and Management)

## **FIRST YEAR (82 CREDITS)**

### **Compulsory modules**

Animal Production Physiology	112(8)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Crop Production	152(8)
Introduction to Economics	141(12)
Financial Accounting	179(26)
Mathematics for EMS	171(18)
Theory of Interest	142(6)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

## **SECOND YEAR (100 CREDITS)**

### **Compulsory modules**

Business Management	113(12), 142(6)
Economics	114(12), 144(12)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
Soil Science	114(16), 142(8)

Statistics and Data Science	188(18)
-----------------------------	---------

Take note of the following.

- You must pass all prescribed modules for these two years to gain admission to the second year of the mainstream programme.

### First-year curriculum for the ECP in BAgri (Agri-business Management)

#### FIRST YEAR (82 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory modules

Animal Production Physiology	112(8)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Crop Production	152(8)
Introduction to Economics	141(12)
Financial Accounting	179(26)
Mathematics for EMS	171(18)
Theory of Interest	142(6)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

#### SECOND YEAR (96 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory modules

Business Management	113(12), 142(6)
Economics	114(12), 144(12)
Introduction to Transport and Logistics Systems	144(12)
Soil Science	114(16), 142(8)
Statistics and Data Science	188(18)

Take note of the following.

- You must pass all prescribed modules for these two years to gain admission to the second year of the mainstream programme.

## 4. Compulsory module for first-year students

As first-year student you must register for the ReadTheory short course and complete it to the satisfaction of the Faculty before your degree can be awarded.

## 5. Bachelor's programmes

### 5.1 Plant and Soil Sciences

More information is available on the following websites:

- <https://agronomy.sun.ac.za/>  
(Department of Agronomy)
- <https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/horticulture>  
(Department of Horticultural Science)
- <https://plant-pathology.sun.ac.za/>  
(Department of Plant Pathology)
- <https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/soil-science>  
(Department of Soil Science)

#### Programme description and outcomes

The bachelor's programme in Plant and Soil Sciences leads to the qualification BScAgric. The programme covers training in the production of agricultural crops, pasture crops, vegetable crops, deciduous fruit, citrus

and vines. For each crop, various subjects, such as Crop Production, Biochemistry, Soil Science, Agricultural Water Science, Agricultural Economics, Genetics, Entomology, Nematology, Plant Pathology and Biometry, are integrated into a meaningful whole.

Within this whole, you follow a combination of modules on ecology, development, physiology, production, breeding, nutrition, soil and water management, as well as harmful plant pathogens, insects, nematodes and their control in an environmentally friendly, sustainable and economically acceptable way.

There are three fields of study within the programme. These fields of study with the applicable majors are:

- **Crop Production Systems:**
  - Agronomy, Horticultural Science or Grapevine Sciences in combination with Entomology, Plant Pathology or Agricultural Economics; or
  - Agricultural Economics in combination with Animal Science and Agronomy;
- **Crop Protection and Breeding:** Plant Pathology and Entomology or Genetics; and
- **Soil and Water Management:** Soil Science and one of Agronomy, Horticultural Science, or Grapevine Sciences.

In Crop Production Systems you will be trained as a crop production manager for, amongst others, agronomy, deciduous fruit, citrus and vines. In Crop Protection and Breeding you will be trained to become specialists in crop protection (the control of entomological and nematological pests and plant diseases) and genetic crop improvement. In Soil and Water Management you will be trained to become a specialist who understand the nature, importance and management of soil, soil fertility and water in crop production.

After successful completion of this programme you will be able to:

- formulate, analyse, evaluate and solve general terms, concepts, principles, theories and problems relating to relevant topics, singly or in combination, of crop production, crop protection and breeding, and soil and water management;
- identify and by critical and creative input solve production and management problems relating to soil or crop matters. Solutions will be scientifically founded and based on theory-driven arguments, enabling decisions to be taken in a responsible manner. In the Crop Production field of study problems of crops are addressed. In the Crop Protection and Breeding field of study problems dealing with plant health (plant pathological or entomological in nature) or improved breeding (genetics) are dealt with. In the Soil and Water Management field of study the responsible management of soil regarding the genesis, both physical and chemical properties, and water is addressed;
- effectively liaise, communicate and work together in group association. The programme covers participation with group work, group activities (for example farm planning task in Soil Science and orchard management plan in Horticulture) and evaluation in group association;
- organise and manage, singly or in group association, in a responsible and effective manner;
- learn to independently extract scientific information, to analyse, combine and critically evaluate and to apply same in specialised subjects for example pedology and land evaluation, soilless cultivation of crops, cultivation of deciduous fruit or fynbos, selection of wine grape cultivars on specific soils and terrains ("terroir"), detection and identification of pest organisms in the vine and fruit industries;
- effectively communicate with peers, supervisors and subordinates by the use of information technology as support for oral or written discussions and presentation of reports and submissions;
- use applicable scientific and statistical methods and evaluations for decision-making in regard to soil, botanical, plant health and plant breeding aspects; and
- understand and appreciate in the chosen field of study the complex and interdisciplinary interactions and have a holistic approach to these and similar fields of study.

The prescribed modules and elective modules of the various years of study for each field are set out below. The module contents are given in the chapter "Subjects, Modules and Module Contents" of this Yearbook part. For compulsory practical work in Soil Science and Grapevine Sciences see section 4 in this chapter. You can find information on practical training in Soil Science and Grapevine Sciences at the relevant field of study.

### 5.1.1 BScAgric (Plant and Soil Sciences)

**Focal area: Crop Production Systems with Agronomy, Horticultural Science or Grapevine Sciences in combination with Entomology, Genetics, Plant Pathology or Agricultural Economics**

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and



- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

## FIRST YEAR (122, 124, 130 OR 132 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Biology	124(16)
Chemistry	124(16), 144(16)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Crop Production	151(8), 152(8)
Crop Protection	152(8)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
AND	
<b><i>If Agronomy or Horticultural Science is your chosen major where Agricultural Economics is not your second major</i></b>	
Physics (Bio)	134(16), 154(16)
OR	
<b><i>If Grapevine Sciences is your chosen major where Agricultural Economics is not your second major</i></b>	
Grapevine and Wine Sciences	142(8)
Physics (Bio)	134(16), 154(16)
OR	
<b><i>If Agricultural Economics is your major, with Agronomy or Horticultural Science as your second major</i></b>	
Economics	114(12), 144(12)
Theory of Interest	142(6)
OR	
<b><i>If Agricultural Economics is your major, with Grapevine Sciences as your second major</i></b>	
Economics	114(12), 144(12)
Theory of Interest	142(6)
Grapevine and Wine Sciences	142(8)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

## SECOND YEAR (124 OR 136 OR 144 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Biochemistry	214(16), 244(16)
Biometry	212(8), 242(8)
Crop Protection	244(16)
Soil Science	214(16), 244(16)
AND	
<b><i>If Agronomy is your chosen major where Agricultural Economics is not your second major</i></b>	
Agronomy	212(8)
Genetics	214(16), 244(16)
OR	
<b><i>If Horticultural Science is your chosen major where Agricultural Economics is not your second major</i></b>	



Crop Production	214(16)
Genetics	214(16), 244(16)
OR	
<i>If Grapevine Sciences is your chosen major where Agricultural Economics is not your second major</i>	
Grapevine Sciences	214(12), 244(16)
OR	
<i>If Agricultural Economics is your major, with Agronomy as your second major</i>	
Agronomy	212(8)
Agricultural Economics	234(16), 242(8), 262(8)
OR	
<i>If Agricultural Economics is your major, with Horticultural Science as your second major</i>	
Crop Production	214(16)
Agricultural Economics	234(16), 242(8), 262(8)
OR	
<i>If Agricultural Economics is your major, with Grapevine Sciences as your second major</i>	
Grapevine Sciences	214(12), 244(16)
Agricultural Economics	234(16), 242(8), 262(8)

### THIRD YEAR (120, 136 OR 144 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

The compulsory modules are combined with a crop of choice option and additional elective modules.

Soil Science	314(16), 344(16)
--------------	------------------

#### Crop of Choice as first major

##### Crop of choice 1: Agronomy

Agronomy	312(8)*, 311(4), 313(4), 324(16), 341(4), 343(4), 371(6), 372(6)
Horticultural Science	352(8)

\* You only need to register for Agronomy 312 if you failed this module in 2025. This module will not be presented from 2027 onwards.

##### Crop of choice 2: Grapevine Sciences

Grapevine Sciences	314(12), 344(12)
--------------------	------------------

##### Crop choice 3: Horticultural Science

Horticultural Science	314(16), 342(8), 352(8)
WITH	
Grapevine Sciences	312(8)
AND	
Agronomy	343(4), 372(6)
OR	
Horticultural Science	362(8)

## Additional elective modules as second major

Choose two from the following four choices. Entomology 314(16) and Nematology 344(16) cannot be taken in combination with Agricultural Economics 314(16) and 364(16). If Grapevine Sciences is your first major, you cannot take Genetics as second major.

Agricultural Economics	314(16), 364(16)
OR	
Entomology	314(16)
Nematology	344(16)
OR	
Genetics	314(16), 344(16)
Data Science and Computational Thinking	314(8) <i>(This module is taken instead of Grapevine Sciences 312)</i>
OR	
Plant Pathology	314(16), 344(16)

## FOURTH YEAR (120, 128, 136, 144 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules for all combinations

Crop Production	478(16)
-----------------	---------

### Crop of choice as first major:

#### Crop choice 1: Agronomy

Agronomy	424(16)*, 411(8), 463(8), 464(8), 465(8), 471(6), 472(10)
Applied Plant Physiology	414(16)
AND	
Applied Plant Physiology	464(16)**

\*Due to programme renewal, this module will not be offered from 2027 onwards.

\*\*You only need to register for Applied Plant Physiology 464 if you failed this module in 2025. From 2027 onwards, this module will no longer be part of the Agronomy Crop Choice.

#### Crop choice 2: Grapevine Sciences

Grapevine Sciences	444(16), 452(8)
Grapevine and Wine Sciences	444(8), 454(8)
Applied Plant Physiology	414(16)

#### Crop choice 3: Horticultural Science

Horticultural Science	434(16), 444(16)
Applied Plant Physiology	414(16), 464(16)

### Choose one of the following as second major:

(If Grapevine Sciences is your first major, you cannot take Genetics as second major.)

#### Agricultural Economics

Agricultural Economics	414(16), 434(16), 444(16), 454(16)
------------------------	------------------------------------

#### Entomology

Entomology	413(16)
Conservation Ecology	444(16)
Plant Pathology	414(16)

## Plant Pathology

Plant Pathology	414(16), 444(16), 474(16)
-----------------	---------------------------

## Genetics

Genetics	324(16), 354(16), 414(16)
----------	---------------------------

### 5.1.2 BScAgric (Plant and Soil Sciences)

#### Focal area: Crop Production Systems with Agronomy, Agricultural Economics and Animal Science

If you follow this programme successfully you will be able to register as an agricultural scientist with The South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP). You will, however, not be able to register as an animal scientist.

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

### FIRST YEAR (126 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Animal Science	144(20)
Biology	124(16)
Chemistry	124(16), 144(16)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Crop Production	151(8)
Economics	114(12), 144(12)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
Theory of Interest	142(6)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

### SECOND YEAR (136 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	242(8)
Agronomy	212(8)
Animal Anatomy and Physiology	214(16), 244(8)
Biochemistry	214(16), 244(16)
Biometry	212(8), 242(8)
Introduction to Animal Nutrition	244(16)
Soil Science	214(16), 244(16)

### THIRD YEAR (140 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	314(16), 364(16)
Agronomy	324(16), 341(4)
Animal Nutrition Science	324(12), 344(12)
Animal Physiology	324(16), 344(16)
Soil Science	314(16), 344(16)

### FOURTH YEAR (134 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	434(16), 478(32)
Agronomy	424(16)*, 313(4), 463(8), 464(8), 472(10)
Animal Nutrition Science	414(12), 444(12)
Animal Management Science	434(16), 464(16)

\*Due to programme renewal, this module will not be offered from 2027 onwards.

#### 5.1.3 BScAgric (Plant and Soil Sciences)

##### Focal area: Crop Protection and Breeding with Plant Pathology and Entomology or Genetics

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

### FIRST YEAR (124 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Biology	124(16)
Chemistry	124(16), 144(16)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Crop Production	151(8), 152(8)
Crop Protection	152(8)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
Physics (Bio)	134(16), 154(16)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

## SECOND YEAR (144 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Biochemistry	214(16), 244(16)
Biometry	212(8), 242(8)
Crop Production	214(16)
Crop Protection	244(16)
Genetics	214(16), 244(16)
Soil Science	214(16), 244(16)

## THIRD YEAR (136 OR 144 CREDITS)

With Genetics and Plant Pathology as majors, taking Agronomy as the crop of choice in the 3rd year

Data Science and Computational Thinking	314(8) <i>(This module is taken instead of Grapevine Sciences 312)</i>
Genetics	314(16), 344(16)
Plant Pathology	314(16), 344(16)
Entomology	314(16)
Nematology	344(16)
Agronomy	311(4), 313(4), 324(16), 341(4), 343(4), 371(6), 372(6)

With Genetics and Plant Pathology as majors, taking Horticultural Science as crop of choice in the 3rd year

Data Science and Computational Thinking	314(8) <i>(This module is taken instead of Grapevine Sciences 312)</i>
Genetics	314(16), 344(16)
Plant Pathology	314(16), 344(16)
Entomology	314(16)
Nematology	344(16)
Horticultural Science	314(16), 342(8), 352(8)
AND	
Agronomy	343(4)
OR	
Horticultural Science	362(8)

Entomology and Plant Pathology as majors must be combined with a crop of choice, as indicated in the tables below.

### Compulsory modules

Entomology	314(16)
Nematology	344(16)
Plant Pathology	314(16), 344(16)
Soil Science	314(16), 344(16)

## Crop of Choice

### Crop of Choice 1: Agronomy

Agronomy	312(8)*, 311(4), 313(4), 324(16), 341(4), 343(4), 371(6), 372(6)
Horticultural Science	352(8)

\*You only need to take Agronomy 312 if you failed this module in 2025. This module will not be presented from 2027 onwards.

### Crop of Choice 2: Horticultural Science

Horticultural Science	314(16), 342(8), 352(8)
WITH EITHER	
Grapevine Sciences	312(8)
AND	
Agronomy	343(4)
OR	
Horticultural Science	362(8)

## FOURTH YEAR (128 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Crop Production	478(16)
Applied Plant Physiology	414(16)

With Genetics and Plant Pathology as majors and either Agronomy or Horticultural Science as crop of choice in the 3rd year

Plant Pathology	414(16), 444(16), 474(16)
Genetics	324(16), 354(16), 414(16)

With Plant Pathology and Entomology as majors

Plant Pathology	414(16), 444(16), 474(16)
Entomology	413(16), 464(16)
Conservation Ecology	444(16)

### 5.1.4 BScAgric (Plant and Soil Sciences)

**Focal area: Soil and Water Management with Soil Science and one of Agronomy, Horticultural Science or Grapevine Sciences**

### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

## FIRST YEAR (124 OR 132 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Biology	124(16)
Chemistry	124(16), 144(16)
Computer Skills	136(4)*

Crop Production	151(8), 152(8)
Crop Protection	152(8)
Physics (Bio)	134(16), 154(16)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
Grapevine and Wine Sciences	142(8) <i>(For students with Soil Science and Grapevine Science as second major, Grapevine and Wine Sciences 142 is compulsory)</i>

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

## SECOND YEAR (120 OR 124 OR 128 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Biochemistry	214(16), 244(16)
Biometry	212(8), 242(8) <i>(Students with Grapevine Sciences only take Biometry 212 and 242 in their third year)</i>
Crop Protection	244(16)
Soil Science	214(16), 244(16), 222(16)
If Agronomy is the crop of choice	
Agronomy	212(8)
OR	
If Horticultural Science is the crop of choice	
Crop Production	214(16)
OR	
If Grapevine Sciences is the crop of choice	
Grapevine Sciences	214(12), 244(16)

## THIRD YEAR (128, 136 OR 144 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Chemistry	234(16)
Plant Pathology	314(16), 344(16)
Soil Science	314(16), 344(16)

### Crop of Choice as second major

#### Crop of Choice 1: Agronomy

Agronomy	312(8)*, 311(4), 313(4), 324(16), 341(4), 343(4), 371(6), 372(6)
Horticultural Science	352(8)

\*You only need to register for Agronomy 312 if you failed this module in 2025. This module will not be presented from 2027 onwards.

#### Crop of Choice 2: Grapevine Sciences

Grapevine Sciences	314(12), 344(12)
Biometry	212 (8), 242 (8) <i>(Students with Grapevine Sciences as crop of choice must now take Biometry 212 and 242 in their third year)</i>

### Crop of Choice 3: Horticultural Science

Horticultural Science	314(16), 342(8), 352(8)
WITH EITHER	
Grapevine Sciences	312(8)
AND	
Agronomy	343(4)
OR	
Horticultural Science	362(8)

### FOURTH YEAR (120, 128 CREDITS)

#### Organised excursion and/or practical assignment

Please note that you must undertake an organised excursion and/or do a practical assignment during short vacation(s) and/or weekends for the modules Soil Science 414, 424 and 444. Such organised excursion and/or assignment takes place under the guidance of lecturers from the Department of Soil Science in collaboration with lecturers from the departments of Agronomy, Horticultural Science or Viticulture and Oenology. This necessary practical experience must be done during the relevant semesters of the abovementioned modules.

#### Compulsory Modules

Crop Production	478(16)
Soil Science	414(16), 424(16), 444(16)

#### Elective Modules

Choose one of the four options in the table below.

Chemistry	314(16)#, 324(16)#, 344(16)#, 364(16)#
OR	
Agronomy	424(16)*, 411(8), 463(8), 464(8), 465(8), 471(6), 472(10) <b>(These modules are followed with Agronomy as major)</b>
Applied Plant Physiology	414(16)
OR	
Grapevine Sciences	444(16), 452(8)
Grapevine and Wine Sciences	444 (8), 454 (8)
Applied Plant Physiology	414(16)
OR	
Horticultural Science	434(16), 444(16) <b>(These modules are followed with Horticultural Science as major)</b>
Applied Plant Physiology	414(16), 464(16)

#These modules will not be offered as electives if you enter your fourth year of studies from 2027 onwards. However, if you fail these modules in 2026, you will be able to repeat them as needed.

\*Due to programme renewal, this module will not be offered from 2027 onwards.

#### Additional Elective Module (not compulsory)

Due to programme renewal, Agronomy 424 will be presented for the last time in 2026. In 2026, if you take Agronomy as a major, you may choose to take 424 as an additional module if it fits into your class, test, and examination timetables. Your total credits will then be 136.

Agronomy	424(16)
----------	---------



## 5.2 Food Production Systems

More information is available on the following website:

- <https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/food-science>  
(Department of Food Science)

### Programme Description and Outcomes

The bachelor's programme in Food Production Systems leads to the qualification BSc (Food Science).

Food Science covers the interactions between food ingredients, the food environment, development of new products, the investigation of food structures, sensory and nutritional properties, the postharvest handling and preservation of food in an environmentally and economically acceptable manner, as well as the commercialisation of traditional food products for prospective low-income entrepreneurs.

After successful completion of this programme, you will be able to:

- understand the terms, concepts, principles and theories regarding food science;
- identify and solve production and management problems within the food industry using critical and creative thinking to formulate well thought through solutions and theoretical arguments;
- work effectively within a team;
- organise and manage group and individual activities responsibly and effectively by setting and successfully meeting deadlines;
- obtain, analyse, compile and critically evaluate scientific information and apply this information independently;
- communicate information effectively, using the latest technology;
- apply scientific methodology, procedures, and techniques; and
- demonstrate a holistic approach and understanding of the respective areas of food science.

### Industry Training in Food Production Systems

If you are following the programme BSc Food Science you must carry out practical work to the satisfaction of the University in approved food installations or food research institutions for at least six weeks of your summer and/or winter vacations. You must submit a satisfactory report in your final year to the Department, before the degree can be awarded. This report must be prepared in accordance with the instructions of the Department of Food Science.

*Please note:* The University is not liable for any injury that you may sustain during industry training or for any claims that may result from such injury.

The prescribed modules of the various years of study of this programme are set out below. The module contents are given in the chapter "Subjects, Modules and Module Contents" of this part of the Yearbook.

#### 5.2.1 BSc (Food Science)

##### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

#### FIRST YEAR (132 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Biology	124(16), 154(16)
Chemistry	124(16), 144(16)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Food Science	144(16)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
Physics (Bio)	134(16), 154(16)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second

semester.

## SECOND YEAR (128 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Biochemistry	214(16), 244(16)
Biometry	212(8), 242(8)
Chemistry	214(16), 264(16)
Food Science	214(16), 244(16)
Microbiology	214(16)

## THIRD YEAR (128 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Applied Chemistry	334(16)
Food Science	314(16), 324(16), 333(16), 344(16), 353(16), 354(16)
Microbiology	244(16)

## FOURTH YEAR (127 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Food Process Engineering	414(15), 444(15)
Food Science	414(16), 478(48), 488(32), 441(1)

## 5.3 Wine Production Systems

More information is available on the following websites:

- <https://viticulture-oenology.sun.ac.za/>  
(Department of Viticulture and Oenology)

### Programme description and outcomes

The bachelor's programme in Grapevine and Wine Sciences leads to the qualification BScAgric.

Grapevine and Wine Sciences covers the vine and its organs and integrates this knowledge in the scientific manipulation of the plant for the creation, in harmony with the environment, of sustainable product types which can be used to produce unique wines. Furthermore, it deals with the integration of a thorough understanding of the chemical and biological processes involved in the making of wine and brandy products in order to ensure the sustainability of the natural resources. In this field you will be prepared for a career in the grape and wine industries.

After successful completion of this programme you will be able to:

- understand the terms, concepts, principles and theories within the fields of wine sciences, grapevine sciences or grape and wine biotechnology;
- identify and solve unfamiliar production and management problems within the grape and wine industries using evidence-based solutions and theory-driven arguments, using critical and creative thinking;
- interact effectively within a team;
- organise and manage individual and group activities responsibly and effectively by successfully meeting regular deadlines for projects, reports and tests;
- retrieve, analyse, compile and critically evaluate scientific information, and apply this information independently;
- communicate information effectively by applying scientific methodology, procedures, operations and techniques, including the use of experimental controls and relevant statistical methods and the effective evaluation of it; and
- demonstrate a holistic view and understanding of the complex nature and interdisciplinary relationships of the applied fields of wine production systems.

## Industry training in Wine Production Systems

If you are following the BScAgric programme with Grapevine and Wine Sciences as majors, you must complete a compulsory internship as determined by the Department. The internship is from the end of the third year to the middle of the fourth year in table or wine grape vineyards and pertains to pruning during winter, canopy management during summer and working in a commercial wine cellar or pack store. The Department of Viticulture and Oenology will provide specific minimum requirements pertaining to the number of weeks you must spend on these aspects. These work programmes are cleared in consultation with lecturers in the Department of Viticulture and Oenology and you must pass Grapevine and Wine Sciences 478 associated with the internship in order to qualify for the degree BScAgric.

To enable you to perform practical work during the harvest season, as a final-year student, you will be excused from lectures until the second semester.

*Please note:* The University is not liable for any injury that you may sustain during industry training or for any claims that may result from such injury.

The prescribed modules of the various years of study for each field are set out below. The module contents are given in the chapter "Subjects, Modules and Module Content" of this Yearbook part.

### 5.3.1 BScAgric (Viticulture and Oenology)

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

### FIRST YEAR (132 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Biology	124(16), 154(16)
Chemistry	124(16), 144(16)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Crop Production	152(8)
Grapevine and Wine Sciences	142(8)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
Physics (Bio)	134(16), 154(16)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

### SECOND YEAR (140 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Biochemistry	214(16)
Chemistry	264(16)
Grapevine Sciences	214(12), 244(16)
Grapevine and Wine Sciences	212(8), 278(8)
Soil Science	214(16), 244(16)
Wine Sciences	214(16), 244(16)

## THIRD YEAR (120 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Grapevine Sciences	314(12), 344(12)
Grapevine and Wine Sciences	378(16)
Wine Sciences	314(16), 344(16)

plus

### Elective Modules

Choose (with consideration of prerequisites and the time table) modules to the credit value of 48.

Chemistry	314(16)
Data Science and Computational Thinking	314(8), 344(8)
Entomology	314(16)
Plant Pathology	314(16), 344(16)
Soil Science	314(16), 344(16)

## FOURTH YEAR (124 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Grapevine Sciences	444(16), 452(8)
Grapevine and Wine Sciences	444(8), 454(8), 478(60)
Wine Sciences	446(24)

## 5.4 Animal Production Systems

More information is available on the following website:

- <https://animal-science.sun.ac.za/>  
(Department of Animal Sciences)

### Programme description and outcomes

The bachelor's programme in Animal Production Systems leads to the qualification BScAgric. The programme covers the integration of knowledge of ecology, biochemistry, physiology, nutrition, breeding, production and product quality, as well as the management of animal production systems for increased production and production efficiency in an environmentally friendly and economically efficient manner.

The programme makes provision for one field of study only, namely Animal Science.

After the successful completion of this programme you will be able to:

- know and understand terminology, concepts, theory and principles of animal physiology, animal breeding and animal nutrition;
- create the awareness and understanding that the different disciplines describe different dimensions of a complex animal production system as well as their interaction with one another;
- apply analytical thinking and practical skills in extensive and intensive animal production environments, laboratories, in the field and through the use of computers;
- identify, analyse and propose solutions to industry-related problems;
- make responsible decisions using critical and creative thought processes;
- function in an interdisciplinary environment;
- register as a Candidate Natural Scientist, qualified as an animal scientist, with the South African Council of Natural Scientific Professions;
- demonstrate a positive attitude, not only towards the animal industry, but also towards the broader community by means of continuous service and professional development; and
- study towards obtaining postgraduate qualifications at national and international bodies.

## Practical training in Animal Science (Performance testing of sheep and wool classing)

All third-year students who are taking Animal Science as a major must attend a course on wool classing. The course is presented during the week before the start of the academic year. If you are taking Animal Science as a major, then you must also attend training in performance testing of sheep in your final year. It is a five-day course that is presented during the June vacation.

The prescribed modules of the various years of study for each field are set out below. The module contents are given in the chapter "Subjects, Modules and Module Contents" of this Yearbook part.

### 5.4.1 BScAgric (Animal Science)

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

#### FIRST YEAR (120 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Animal Science	144(20)
Biology	124(16), 154(16)
Chemistry	124(16), 144(16)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
Physics (Bio)	134(16)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

#### SECOND YEAR (136 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Animal Anatomy and Physiology	214(16), 244(8)
Biochemistry	214(16), 244(16)
Biometry	212(8), 242(8)
Genetics	214(16), 244(16)
Introduction to Animal Nutrition	244(16)
Microbiology	214(16)

#### THIRD YEAR (128 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Animal Health	342(8)
Animal Nutrition Science	324(12), 344(12)
Animal Physiology	324(16), 344(16)
Data Science and Computational Thinking	314(8), 344(8)
Genetics	324(16), 354(16)
Agronomy	324(16)

## FOURTH YEAR (128 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Animal Breeding and Genetics I	424(16)
Animal Breeding and Genetics II	452(8)
Animal Nutrition Science	414(12), 444(12)
Animal Product Science	334(16)
Animal Science	474(32)
Animal Management Science	434(16), 464(16)

## 5.5 Agricultural Economics

More information is available on the following website:

- <https://agricultural-economics.sun.ac.za/>  
(Department of Agricultural Economics)

### Programme description and outcomes

The bachelor's programme in Agricultural Economics leads to one of the following qualifications: BScAgric or BAgric (Agri-business Management). The aim of the programme is to develop skilled agricultural economists and agricultural managers for the public and private sectors who have a thorough understanding of agricultural economics and agricultural management techniques. In order to satisfy all the agricultural economics and agricultural management requirements of the target markets, the programme consists of five related fields of study with corresponding degree qualifications:

- Agricultural Economic Analysis (BScAgric);
- Agricultural Economic Analysis and Management (BScAgric);
- Agricultural Economic Analysis and Management with Food Science (BScAgric);
- Agricultural Economics with Food Science (BScAgric); and
- Agri-business Management (BAgric).

After successful completion of the programme you will be able to:

- access a wide variety of professions in and outside agriculture and be able to switch professions with greater ease in our rapidly changing environment, because the training spans the physical, biological and social sciences;
- understand the integrated nature of the physical, biological and social aspects of a farming enterprise in order to manage it better;
- plan and manage the processing of farming commodities in order to add value;
- manage agribusinesses that supply farming requisites such as seed, pesticides and herbicides and finance to farmers;
- manage agribusinesses that process and market farm products. The combination of Food Science with commerce subjects, for example, provides an excellent background to prospective managers of food manufacturers;
- analyse agricultural and broader economic policy and take part in policy recommendations;
- provide management advice to farmers and other agribusinesses as professional consultants;
- manage the logistical aspects of the provision of farm requisites and farm products, as well as non-agricultural products;
- conduct in-depth and professional research and find solutions to complex problems that arise in the management of farms and other agribusinesses and in the agricultural economy generally;
- understand the process of planning and executing the concepts of pricing, promotion and the distribution of ideas, products and services in agricultural markets;
- understand agricultural market institutions, market processes and issues of organisation, control and public policy; and
- apply fundamental analytical tools to various marketing problems in agricultural food markets.

The prescribed modules of the various years of study for each field are set out below. The module contents are given in the chapter "Subjects, Modules and Module Contents" of this Yearbook part.

For the degree BCom with Agricultural Economics see the Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences' Yearbook Part, Part 10.

### 5.5.1 BAgric (Agri-business Management)

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

#### FIRST YEAR (122 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Animal Production Physiology	112(8)
Business Management	113(12), 142(6)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Crop Production	152(8)
Economics	114(12), 144(12)
Introduction to Transport and Logistics Systems	144(12)
Soil Science	114(16), 142(8)
Statistics and Data Science	188(18)
Theory of Interest	142(6)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

#### SECOND YEAR (120 OR 136 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	234(16), 242(8), 262(8)
Financial Accounting	188(24)
and one of the following two groups with the value of 48 credits	
Financial Management	214(16) Δ
Marketing Management	214(16) Δ
Financial Management	244(16) # or
Investment Management	254(16) # or
Marketing Management	244(16) Δ
OR	
Financial Management	214(16)
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	214(16), 244(16)
and one of the following two groups with the value of 16 or 32 credits	
Agronomy	212(8)
Horticultural Science	222(8)
OR	
Animal Production	214(16)
Introduction to Animal Nutrition	244(16)

Δ If you take Marketing Management 214 and 244, you must take Financial Management 214 (all three marked with a Δ). Also see the prerequisites for Marketing Management 214 and 244 in the module contents chapter of this Yearbook part.

# These two modules cannot be taken together.

### THIRD YEAR (128 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	314(16), 334(16), 354(16), 364(16)
Agronomy	324(16)

plus

#### Elective Modules

Choose modules to the value of 48 credits from the table below as allowed by the timetable.

Financial Management	314(12), 332(12), 352(12), 354(12)
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12), 354(12)
Marketing Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12), 354(12)
Strategic Management	344(12)

### 5.5.2 BScAgric (Agricultural Economics) Focal area: Agricultural Economic Analysis

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

### FIRST YEAR (124 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Biology	124(16), 144(16), 154(16)
Chemistry	124(16), 144(16)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Economics	114(12), 144(12)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

### SECOND YEAR (138 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	234(16), 242(8), 262(8)
Animal Production Physiology	112(8)
Business Management	113(12), 142(6)
Financial Accounting	188(24)
Soil Science	214(16), 244(16)
Statistics and Data Science	188(18)
Theory of Interest	142(6)



### THIRD YEAR (128 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	314(16), 364(16)
Economics	217(16)*, 248(16)**
AND	
Financial Accounting	288(32)
OR	
Statistics	214(16), 244(16)

\*If you failed the module Economics 214(16) in 2025 or earlier, you must register for the interim module Economics 271(16) and not for Economics 217(16). Any one of Economics 214(16), 271(16) or 217(16) will count for graduation purposes.

\*\*If you failed the module Economics 244(16) in 2025 or earlier, you must register for the interim module Economics 246(16) and not Economics 248(16). Any one of Economics 244(16), 246(16) or 248(16) will count for graduation purposes.

plus

#### Elective Modules

Choose one of the groups to the value of 16 or 32 credits from the table below.

(\*Students who choose the electives Agronomy 212(8) and Horticultural Science 222(8), have to take both Financial Accounting 288(32) and Statistics 214(16) in order to comply with the minimum credit requirement.)

Agronomy*	212(8)
Horticultural Science*	222(8)
OR	
Animal Production	214(16)
Introduction to Animal Nutrition	244(16)

### FOURTH YEAR (144 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	414(16), 434(16), 444(16), 454(16), 478(32), 479(24)
Economics	318(24) or 348(24) or 388(24)

#### 5.5.3 BScAgric (Agricultural Economics)

##### Focal area: Agricultural Economic Analysis and Management

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

### FIRST YEAR (126 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Animal Production Physiology	112(8)
Business Management	113(12), 142(6)
Crop Production	152(8)

Computer Skills	136(4)*
Economics	114(12), 144(12)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
Soil Science	114(16), 142(8)
Statistics and Data Science	188(18)
Theory of Interest	142(6)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

## SECOND YEAR (120 OR 136 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	234(16), 242(8), 262(8)
Financial Accounting	188(24)
AND	
Agronomy	212(8)
Horticultural Science	222(8)
OR	
Animal Production	214(16) and
Introduction to Animal Nutrition	244(16)

plus

### Elective Modules

Choose modules to value of 48 credits from one of the groups below. You can only take your chosen group of modules if the class, test and exam timetables allow the specific combination of modules.

Financial Management	214(16)Δ, 244(16)#
Investment Management	254(16)#
Marketing Management	214(16)Δ, 244(16)Δ
OR	
Entrepreneurship and Innovation Management	214(16), 244(16)
Financial Management	214(16)Δ, 244(16)#
Investment Management	254(16)#
OR	
Financial Management	214(16)Δ, 244(16)#
Investment Management	254(16)#
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	214(16), 244(16)
OR	
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	214(16), 244(16)
Marketing Management	214(16)Δ, 244(16)Δ
OR	
Entrepreneurship and Innovation Management	214(16), 244(16)
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	214(16), 244(16)

Δ If you take Marketing Management 214 and 244, you must take Financial Management 214 (all three marked with a Δ). Also see the prerequisites for Marketing Management 214 and 244 in the module contents chapter of this Yearbook part.

# These two modules cannot be taken together.

## THIRD YEAR (136 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	314(16), 364(16)
Crop Protection	244(16)

plus

### Elective Modules

Choose modules to a minimum value of 88 credits from one of the groups below. You can only take your chosen group of modules if the class, test and exam timetables allow the specific combination of modules.

Economics	271(16)*, 248(16)**
Entrepreneurship and Innovation Management	318(24)
Financial Accounting	288(32)
Financial Management	314(12), 332(12), 352(12), 354(12)
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12), 354(12)
Statistics	214(16), 244(16)
Strategic Management	344(12)
Management Accounting	288(24)
OR	
Economics	271(16)*, 248(16)**
Entrepreneurship and Innovation Management	318(24)
Financial Accounting	288(32)
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12), 354(12)
Marketing Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12)
Statistics	214(16), 244(16)
Strategic Management	344(12)
Management Accounting	288(24)
OR	
Economics	271(16)*, 248(16)**
Financial Accounting	288(32)
Financial Management	314(12), 332(12), 352(12), 354(12)
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12), 354(12)
Statistics	214(16), 244(16)
Strategic Management	344(12)
Transport Economics	214(16)
Management Accounting	288(24)
OR	
Economics	271(16)*, 248(16)**
Financial Accounting	288(32)
Financial Management	314(12), 332(12), 352(12), 354(12)
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12), 354(12)
Marketing Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12)
Statistics	214(16), 244(16)
Strategic Management	344(12)

Management Accounting	288(24)
-----------------------	---------

\*If you failed the module Economics 214(16) in 2025 or earlier, you must register for the interim module Economics 271(16) and not for Economics 217(16). Any one of Economics 214(16), 271(16) or 217(16) will count for graduation purposes.

\*\*If you failed the module Economics 244(16) in 2025 or earlier, you must register for the interim module Economics 246(16) and not Economics 248(16). Any one of Economics 244(16), 246(16) or 248(16) will count for graduation purposes.

## FOURTH YEAR (144 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	414(16), 434(16), 444(16), 454(16), 478(32), 479(24)
------------------------	--

plus

### Elective Modules

Choose modules to a minimum value of 24 credits from one of the groups below. You can only take your chosen group of modules if the class, test and exam timetables allow the specific combination of modules.

Economics	318(24), 348(24), 388(24)
Financial Management	314(12), 332(12), 352(12), 354(12)
Investment Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12), 349(12)
Strategic Management	344(12)
OR	
Economics	318(24), 348(24), 388(24)
Investment Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12), 349(12)
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12), 354(12)
Strategic Management	344(12)

### 5.5.4 BScAgric (Agricultural Economics)

#### Focal area: Agricultural Economic Analysis and Management with Food Science

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

## FIRST YEAR (142 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Animal Production Physiology	112(8)
Business Management	113(12), 142(6)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Crop Production	152(8)
Economics	114(12), 144(12)
Food Science	144(16)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
Soil Science	114(16), 142(8)

Statistics and Data Science	188(18)
Theory of Interest	142(6)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

## SECOND YEAR (120 OR 136 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	234(16), 242(8), 262(8)
Financial Accounting	188(24)
Food Science	214(16), 244(16)
AND	
Agronomy	212(8) and
Horticultural Science	222(8)
OR	
Animal Production	214(16) and
Introduction to Animal Nutrition	244(16)

plus

### Elective Modules

Choose one module from the table below. You can only take your chosen group of modules if the class, test and exam timetables allow the specific combination of modules.

Entrepreneurship and Innovation Management	214(16), 244(16)
Marketing Management	214(16) Δ, 244(16) Δ

Δ If you take Marketing Management 214 and 244, you must take Financial Management 214 in your third year (all three marked with a Δ). Also see the prerequisites for Marketing Management 214 and 244 in the module contents chapter of this Yearbook part.

## THIRD YEAR (128 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	314(16), 364(16)
Crop Protection	244(16)
Financial Management	214(16) Δ
Food Science	314(16), 344(16)

If you take Marketing Management 214 and 244 in your second year, you must take Financial Management 214 (marked with a Δ). Also see the prerequisites for Marketing Management 214 and 244 in the module contents chapter of this Yearbook part.

plus

### Elective Modules

Choose modules to a minimum value of 32 credits from the table below. You can only take your chosen group of modules if the class, test and exam timetables allow the specific combination of modules.

Economics	217(16), 248(16)
Financial Accounting	288(32)
Financial Management	244(16) #
Investment Management	254(16) #
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	214(16), 244(16)

Marketing Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12)
Strategic Management	344(12)
Management Accounting	288(24)

#These two modules cannot be taken together.

\*If you failed the module Economics 214(16) in 2025 or earlier, you must register for the interim module Economics 271(16) and not for Economics 217(16). Any one of Economics 214(16), 271(16) or 217(16) will count for graduation purposes.

\*\*If you failed the module Economics 244(16) in 2025 or earlier, you must register for the interim module Economics 246(16) and not Economics 248(16). Any one of Economics 244(16), 246(16) or 248(16) will count for graduation purposes.

## FOURTH YEAR (144 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	414(16), 434(16), 444(16), 454(16), 479(24)
Food Science	333(16), 414(16)

plus

### Elective Modules

Choose modules to a minimum value of 24 credits from the table below. You can only take your chosen group of modules if the class, test and exam timetables allow the specific combination of modules.

Economics	318(24), 348(24), 388(24)
Financial Management	314(12), 332(12), 352(12), 354(12)
Food Process Engineering	414(15), 444(15)
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12), 354(12)

## 5.5.5 BScAgric (Agricultural Economics)

### Focal area: Agricultural Economics with Food Science

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

## FIRST YEAR (130 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Biology	124(16), 154(16)
Chemistry	124(16), 144(16)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Economics	114(12), 144(12)
Food Science	144(16)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
Theory of Interest	142(6)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

## SECOND YEAR (120 OR 136 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	234(16), 242(8), 262(8)
Financial Accounting	188(24)
Food Science	214(16), 244(16)
Microbiology	214(16)
AND	
Agronomy	212(8)
Horticultural Science	222(8)
OR	
Animal Production	214(16) and
Introduction to Animal Nutrition	244(16)

## THIRD YEAR (128 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	314(16), 364(16)
Crop Protection	244(16)
Food Science	314(16), 344(16)

plus

### Elective Modules

Choose modules to a minimum value of 48 credits from the table below. You can only take your chosen group of modules if the class, test and exam timetables allow the specific combination of modules.

Financial Accounting	288(32)
Financial Management	214(16), 244(16)
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	214(16), 244(16)
Transport Economics	214(16)

## FOURTH YEAR (144 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	414(16), 434(16), 444(16), 454(16), 479(24)
Food Science	333(16), 414(16)

plus

### Elective Modules

Choose modules to a minimum value of 24 credits from the table below. You can only take your chosen group of modules if the class, test and exam timetables allow the specific combination of modules.

Financial Management	314(12), 332(12), 352(12), 354(12)
Food Process Engineering	414(15), 444(15)
Logistics and Supply Chain Management	314(12), 324(12), 344(12), 354(12)

## 5.6 Forestry and Wood Sciences

More information is available on the following website:

- <https://forest-and-wood-science.sun.ac.za/>  
(Department of Forest and Wood Science)

### Programme description and outcomes

This bachelor's programme leads to the Bachelor of Science in Forestry and Wood Sciences (BScFor) degree. Within the programme there are two focal areas, namely:

- Forestry and Natural Resource Sciences; and
- Wood and Wood Products Sciences.

A brief description of the two focal areas including the required practical work is given below.

### Forestry and Natural Resource Sciences

The first year of study in Forestry and Natural Resource Sciences consists of one Forestry module plus the first year of study in the Biological Sciences programme in the Faculty of Science. The second year of study consists of a study of the basic applied sciences such as Soil Science and Biometry, and students start to specialise in forestry disciplines. An integrated approach is taken with emphasis on Forest Management, Silviculture, Forest Engineering and Forestry Development. You have to participate in practical work during vacations from your first to your final year of study.

After successful completion of the focal area *Forestry and Natural Resource Sciences* you will be able to:

- employ and convey the knowledge required to safeguard and utilise, in a sustainable way, natural resource ecosystems, with particular reference to native forests and managed timber plantations;
- provide solutions to concrete and abstract problems affecting the management or conservation of forests and plantations, based on solid evidence and theoretical arguments, using creative and critical thinking;
- work effectively in teams of peers to efficiently produce solutions to problems in the spheres of forestry and natural resource sciences;
- organise and manage time effectively, individually and in groups, in order to successfully meet deadlines associated with reports and submissions;
- effectively collect or retrieve and then process and critically analyse data in the specialised forestry domain in order to satisfy the demands of forest management or further the requirements of forestry research by presenting results in a usable format;
- communicate effectively with peers, superiors and subordinates, using information-technology support for oral or written discourse and the presentation of reports and submissions;
- apply scientific research methodology and state-of-the-art technology in order to effectively undertake a research project investigating any facet of the forestry domain;
- demonstrate a holistic view of the complex of forest ecotypes covering the globe and the interdisciplinary interactions between the biotic and abiotic components thereof; and
- apply professional training and social life skills within the context of forest conservation, management and sustainable utilisation for the benefit of humankind.

### Wood and Wood Products Sciences

For the focal area in Wood and Wood Products Sciences you take modules in the Faculties of AgriSciences, Science and Engineering from the first year of study. The Wood and Wood Products Sciences focal area includes a variety of modules concerned not only with the properties of wood as a material, but also with sawmilling, veneer manufacture, industrial furniture production and the construction and design of wood products. Wood and Wood Products Sciences modules are complemented by a series of engineering-based modules such as Industrial Ergonomics, Engineering Drawing, Engineering Mathematics, Industrial Management and Quality Assurance. You have to participate in practical work during vacations from your first to your final year of study.

After successful completion of the focal area *Wood and Wood Products Sciences* you will be able to:

- apply and convey the knowledge required to utilise the products emanating from natural resource ecosystems in a sustainable manner and process and reconstitute these into products useful to humanity;
- provide solutions based on solid experimental evidence and theoretical arguments, using creative and critical thinking, to concrete and abstract problems affecting production in sawmills, board mills, furniture factories, wood preservation plants, wood construction plants, lamination plants and other wood processing industries;
- work effectively in teams of peers to efficiently produce solutions to problems in the spheres of wood products science and technology;



- organise and manage time effectively, individually and in groups, in order to successfully meet deadlines associated with reports and submissions and manufacturing processes;
- effectively collect or retrieve and then process and critically analyse data in the specialised forest products domain in order to satisfy the demands of processing plant management or to further the requirements of forest product research by presenting results in a usable format;
- communicate effectively with peers, superiors and subordinates, using information-technology support for oral or written discourse and the presentation of reports and submissions;
- apply scientific research methodology and state-of-the-art technology in order to effectively undertake a research project into facets of the forest products domain;
- demonstrate a holistic view of the complex of forest products being produced around the world and the interdisciplinary interactions between the international role players in the field of forest products; and
- apply professional training and social life skills within the context of forest products production and the utilisation of forest resources for the benefit of humankind.

## Practical work in Forest and Wood Sciences

- You must do compulsory practical work in your first three years of study:
  - In your first year, this practical work can take place during either the June or September vacation. If you have completed your first year of study at another university and you are enrolling in the second year, you are still required to complete this practical.
  - During your second and third years of study, you will be required to complete a one-week period of prescribed practical work for each year. This one week of practical work can also be done before the beginning of the academic year.
- You must submit reports of all your practical work to the satisfaction of your lecturers.
- You are responsible for all costs regarding demonstrations and practical work.
- It can be expected of you to do practical work during other vacations in addition to the ones already mentioned.
- In your final year you will:
  - undertake a study tour of approximately two weeks during the winter vacation to the forest regions of South Africa.
  - submit a complete report at the beginning of the second semester as prescribed by the tour leader.
  - collect data during vacations for your management plan or project.
  - complete a comprehensive management plan or project during the second semester that is based on the data you collected during the winter vacation (or an earlier extended vacation).
  - hand in the completed project or management plan before 1 November of the year in which you intend to graduate.
  - obtain a final mark of at least 50 to pass the project or management plan.
    - If you obtain a final mark of 40 to 49 in November, you can submit a modified project or management plan before the January examinations of the following year. That will allow you to receive your degree during the supplementary graduation ceremony in March.
    - If you obtain a final mark of less than 40 in November or you fail to obtain a final mark of at least 50 in January, you must repeat the practical work for the project or management plan.
    - Please note: The University is not liable for any injury that you may sustain during practical work or tours or for any claims that may result from such injury.

The prescribed modules and elective modules of the various years of study for each field are set out below. The module contents are given in the chapter "Subjects, Modules and Module Contents" of this Yearbook part.

## 5.6.1 BSc (Forestry) (Forestry and Wood Sciences)

### Focal area: Forestry and Natural Resources Sciences

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

#### FIRST YEAR (124 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Biology	124(16), 154(16)
Chemistry	124(16), 144(16)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Forest Science	171(24)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)
Physics (Bio)	134(16)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

#### SECOND YEAR (125 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Biometry	212(8), 242(8)
Computer Skills	272(5)
Forest Science	212(8), 254(16)
Geographical Information Technology	214(16)
Soil Science	214(16)
Wood Product Science	224(16), 244(16), 264(16)

#### THIRD YEAR (120 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Data Science and Computational Thinking	314(8)
Forest Science	334(16), 355(16), 356(16), 364(16)
Genetics	214(16)
Soil Science	314(16)
Wood Product Science	335(16)

#### FOURTH YEAR (121 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Forest Science	414(8), 424(16), 434(16), 435(8), 442(1), 468(32)
Industrial Psychology (Special)	354(12)
Wood Product Science	414(16), 444(12)

## 5.6.2 BSc (Forestry) (Forestry and Wood Sciences)

### Focal area: Wood and Wood Products Sciences

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 6 (70%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 5 (60%).

#### FIRST YEAR (123 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Applied Mathematics B	124(15)
Computer Programming	143(12)
Engineering Chemistry	123(15)
Engineering Drawings	123(15)
Engineering Mathematics	115(15), 145(15)
Forest Science	171(24)
Strength of Materials	143(12)

#### SECOND YEAR (130 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Engineering Mathematics	214(15)
Forest Science	254(16)
Industrial Programming	244(15)
Production Management	212(8)
Intercultural Communication	113(8)
Wood Product Science	224(16), 234(16), 244(16), 255(4), 264(16)

#### THIRD YEAR (128 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Engineering Statistics	314(15)
Forest Science	334(16), 355(16), 356(16)
Operations Research (Eng)	345(15)
Production Management	314(15)
Quality Assurance	344(15)
Wood Product Science	335(16), 346(4)

#### FOURTH YEAR (126 CREDITS)

##### Compulsory Modules

Forest Science	442(1), 468(32)
Industrial Ergonomics	414(15)
Operations Research (Eng)	415(15)
Quality Management	444(15)
Wood Product Science	414(16), 426(4), 434(16), 444(12)

## 5.7 Conservation Ecology

More information is available on the following website:

- <https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/agri/departments/conservation-ecology>  
(Department of Conservation Ecology and Entomology)

### Programme description and outcomes

This bachelor's programme leads to the qualification BSc in Conservation Ecology. The programme is a collection of modules that will produce a general outcome, allowing you to choose from a broad range of careers in conservation ecology. Some of the most popular careers in this field of study are:

1. Environmental impact assessment (terrestrial and freshwater).
2. Restoration ecology (employment in mining and agriculture, as well as peri-urban organisations for the rehabilitation of soil to its original, natural condition).
3. Conservation biology (suited to jobs in academia, national and provincial parks boards, urban parks and private nature reserves).
4. Game reserve and nature reserve management.
5. Ecotourism (you can follow careers in various conservation-related fields of ecotourism).
6. Community-based natural resource management (dealing with rural communities and the sustainable use of their natural resources).
7. Environmentally conscious (sustainable) agricultural and forestry production (including organic farm management).

### Practical work

You must take part in practicals in each of the four years of study. Additionally, you must attend a one-week field trip in your fourth year. An integral part of this programme is a comprehensive research project that you must complete and submit in your fourth year.

The prescribed modules of the various years of study in this programme are set out below. The module contents are given in the chapter "Subjects, Modules and Module Contents" of this Yearbook part.

### 5.7.1 BSc (Conservation Ecology)

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An average performance level of 60% in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate (excluding Life Orientation), or other school qualification;
- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%);
- Mathematics – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences (Physics and Chemistry) – 4 (50%).

### FIRST YEAR (132 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Biology	124(16), 144(16), 154(16)
Chemistry	124(16), 144(16)
Computer Skills	136(4)*
Geo Environmental Science	124(16), 154(16)
Mathematics (Bio)	124(16)

\*If you fail Computer Skills 136, you will be required to register for Computer Skills 146 in the second semester.

### SECOND YEAR (125 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Biodiversity and Ecology	212(16), 214(16), 224(16), 254(16), 264(16)
Computer Skills	272(5)

Conservation Ecology	212(8), 244(16)
Geographical Information Technology	214(16)

### THIRD YEAR (128 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Agricultural Economics	262(8)
Biodiversity and Ecology	311(16), 324(16)
Biometry	212(8), 242(8)
Conservation Ecology	314(16), 344(16)
Forest Science	212(8)

plus

#### Elective Modules

Choose two of the five modules below that fit into your class, test and examination timetables. Acceptance to the module Biodiversity and Ecology 315 is limited and you have to apply for acceptance. The module Biodiversity and Ecology 315 is presented outside formal semester times.

Biodiversity and Ecology	315(16)
Biodiversity and Ecology	342(16)
Genetics	214(16)
Geographical Information Technology	241(16)
Soil Science	214(16)

### FOURTH YEAR (120 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Conservation Ecology	414(16), 424(16), 444(16), 478(40)
Entomology	464(16)

plus

#### Elective Modules

Choose one module to the value of 16 credits from the modules below that fit into your class, test and examination timetables.

Entomology	413(16)
Agronomy	424(16)
Sustainability Transitions	478(16)

plus

#### Additional Elective Modules (not compulsory)

You may choose one of the two modules below that fit into your class, test, and examination timetables. Your total credits will then be 136.

Geographical Information Technology	312(16)
Soil Science	314(16)

## 5.8 Agricultural Production and Management (Elsenburg)

### 5.8.1 BAgric

By virtue of a co-operation agreement between Stellenbosch University and the Western Cape Provincial Government, the Bachelor's programme in Agricultural Production and Management (BAgric\*) is presented by the Elsenburg Agricultural Training Institute on the Elsenburg Campus.

\*Please note: The BAgric (Agri-business Management) programme is offered at Stellenbosch University.

### Specific Admission Requirements

- A National Senior Certificate with admission for bachelor's degree studies and an average of at least 55% (excluding Life Orientation)

In addition to the general admission requirements of the University, admission to the programme leading to BAgric (Elsenburg) requires at minimum:

- English or Afrikaans (Home Language or First Additional Language) – 4 (50%); and
- Mathematics – 4 (50%) or Mathematical Literacy – 5 (60%); and
- Physical Sciences – 4 (50%); or
- Life Sciences – 4 (50%) or
- Agricultural Sciences – 4 (50%).

You specialise in one of the fields of study below by choosing two subjects.

Field of Study	Major Subjects
Plant Production	Agronomy, Vegetable Production, Horticultural Science, Viticulture
Animal Production	Large Stock, Small Stock
Plant and Animal Production	Agronomy, Large Stock OR Small Stock
Cellar Technology	Viticulture, Oenology
Cellar Management	Viticulture, Cellar Management
Extension & Plant Production	Extension, Vegetable Production, Horticulture, Viticulture
Extension & Animal Production	Extension, Large Stock, Small Stock

Consult the website at <https://www.elsenburg.com/elsenburg-college/> or contact us at 021 808 5451 for more information about this programme.

## 5.9 Interdisciplinary BDatSci programme

### 5.9.1 BDatSci

#### General Information

#### Interdepartmental and interfaculty collaboration

This programme is presented in four faculties, namely Economic and Management Sciences, Science, AgriSciences and Arts and Social Sciences. The faculty where you are registered awards the degree.

#### Specific Admission requirements

- Overall NSC average of at least 80%, excluding Life Orientation
- Mathematics 80%
- One of the following:
  - Afrikaans Home Language 60%; or
  - English Home Language 60%; or
  - Afrikaans First Additional Language 75%; or
  - English First Additional Language 75%

## Selection

The number of students selected is determined by the Faculty's enrolment plan and may differ from year to year.

If there are more applicants who meet the admission requirements than the capacity of the Faculty's enrolment plan allows, further selection criteria and processes will be applied.

## Application procedure and closing date

Apply electronically at [www.maties.com](http://www.maties.com) by 31 July of the year before your intended studies.

## Duration of programme

Four years, full-time.

## Programme structure

The data science programme, BDatSci, comprises several focal areas each of which spans four years. For each year, there is a set of compulsory modules shared by all the focal areas. There may also be further compulsory and/or elective modules in each year which are specific to the individual focal area. You will register for BDatSci in the faculty that offers your chosen focal area. After completing your BDatSci degree programme, you will be able to apply for a master's programme, since BDatSci is a four-year qualification at honours level (NQF level 8).

## Focal areas

The objective of the focal areas is to help you choose a specific career focus within the BDatSci programme. The focal area is not a programme, and the module combinations are only recommendations so you can make more focussed module choices. Nevertheless, there are a several compulsory modules that must be taken within each focal area. The module choices in the tables describing each focal area fit in with the lecture and assessment timetables.

There are eight focal areas within the BDatSci programme, of which one is offered in the Faculty of AgriSciences. The specific focal area residing within the Faculty of AgriSciences is described below under "Focal areas within the BDatSci programme". For the sake of completeness, however, all eight focal areas in the BDatSci programme are listed below. An indication of the faculty where the programme is offered is given in brackets, and you will find the description of the focal area in that faculty's Yearbook part.

- Statistical Learning (Economic and Management Sciences)
- Analytics and Optimisation (Economic and Management Sciences)
- Behavioural Economics (Economic and Management Sciences)
- Computer Science (Science)
- Applied Mathematics (Science)
- Statistical Physics (Science)
- Geoinformatics (Arts and Social Sciences)
- Statistical Genetics (AgriSciences)

## Changing focal areas in the BDatSci programme

For information on changing focal areas within the BDatSci programme, refer to the relevant appendix in the latest version of the Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences' Yearbook part (Part 10).

## Enquiries

For further information about the BDatSci programme, visit <https://www.su.ac.za/en/faculties/data-science> or email [datascience@sun.ac.za](mailto:datascience@sun.ac.za).

## Programme leader

Prof Paul Mostert

Department of Statistics and Actuarial Science

## Focal areas within the BDatSci programme

### Statistical Genetics

Home Department: Genetics, Faculty of AgriSciences

#### Description of focal area

Statistical genetics is the field of study where statistical methods are used to make inferences of genetic data. It is used in fields such as population and quantitative genetics by for example plant breeders and conservation geneticists and in genetic epidemiology where the effects of genes on diseases are studied.

### FIRST YEAR (128 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Computer Science	113(16), 144(16)
Data Science	141(16)
Mathematics	114(16), 144(16)
Probability Theory and Statistics	114(16)

plus

Biology	124(16)
Applied Mathematics	144(16)

### SECOND YEAR (128 CREDITS)\*

#### Compulsory Modules

Data Science	241(16)
Computer Science	214(16)
Mathematics	214(16)
Mathematical Statistics	214(16), 245(8), 246(8)
Genetics	214(16), 244(16)

plus

Computer Science	244(16)*
OR	
Mathematics	244(16)

\*Please note that if you wish to change to the focal area Computer Science, Computer Science 244 is a compulsory module.

### THIRD YEAR (128 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Modules

Mathematical Statistics	312(16)
Computer Science	315(16), 343(16)
Data Science	316(16), 346(16)
Genetics	314(16), 344(16)
Biotechnology	315(16)



## FOURTH YEAR (124 CREDITS)

### Compulsory Modules

Introduction to Statistical Learning	441(12)
Data Science Research in Statistical Genetics	471(40)
Genetic Data Analysis	413(8)
Bioinformatics	414(8)
Scientific and Proposal Writing	421(8)
Genetics: Molecular Techniques	411(16)
Genomics	416(8)
Machine Learning	441(16)
Human and Animal Genetics	412(8)
OR	
Plant Genetics and Crop Improvement	422(8)

# Postgraduate programmes

For more information on the Faculty's postgraduate programmes, consult the University's Postgraduate Prospectus or the departmental websites.

## 1. Summary of postgraduate programmes

The undergraduate programmes offered in the Faculty of AgriSciences lead to the following postgraduate programmes:

Broad Instructional Programmes	Postgraduate Programmes
Plant and Soil Sciences	PgDip (Agronomy); BScHons in Plant Pathology (BSc degree with Biotechnology, Botany, Genetics or Microbiology as major is a requirement); BScHons in Applied Plant Physiology (BSc degree with Biochemistry, Biotechnology, Botany, Genetics or Plant Biotechnology as major is a requirement); MSc; MScAgric; MSc (Agric) for Agronomy or Soil Science; PhD (Agric); PhD
Animal Production Systems	PgDip (Aquaculture); MScAgric; PhD (Agric); PhD
Food Production Systems	MSc Food Sc; MSc in Food and Nutrition Security; PhD
Wine Production Systems	BScHons (Wine Biotechnology); MSc (Agric); MSc or MScAgric (Wine Biotechnology); MScAgric (Viticulture or Oenology); PhD (Agric); PhD (Oenology, Viticulture or Wine Biotechnology)
Agricultural Economics and Management	BAgricHons (Agri-business Management); MScAgric; MAgric (Agri-business Management); PhD (Agric); PhD
Forestry and Wood Sciences	PgDip (Forestry and Wood Sciences); MScFor; PhD (Agric); PhD
Conservation Ecology	MScConsEcol; PhD (Agric); PhD
Multidisciplinary Programme in Sustainable Agriculture	MSc (Sustainable Agriculture)

## 2. General information on the postgraduate programmes

### 2.1 Postgraduate diploma programmes

- You follow a prescribed course for at least a year after obtaining an applicable bachelor's degree or an equivalent qualification that Senate has approved for this purpose.
- Admission requirements are determined according to your specific programme.
- Consult the rest of this chapter for more information regarding the admission requirements and programme content of your specific postgraduate diploma.
- Consult the section "Postgraduate Qualifications" in Part 1 (General Rules) of the University's Yearbook for other regulations.

### 2.2 Honours programmes

- You follow a prescribed course for at least a year after obtaining an applicable bachelor's degree.
- You must follow the honours degree programme in one of the majors of your bachelor's degree.
- You will be admitted to the honours degree programme if –
  - you are in possession of a bachelor's degree that Senate has approved for this purpose;
  - the subject of your honours programme was passed as a major in the preceding bachelor's degree; and
  - you obtained an average final mark of at least 60 – 65% in the major.
- To pass the honours degree programme you must obtain a final mark of at least 50 (out of 100) for each module.

- e) Consult the rest of this chapter for more information regarding the admission requirements and programme content of your specific honours degree programme.
- f) Consult the section "Postgraduate Qualifications" in Part 1 (General Rules) of the University's Yearbook for other regulations.

## 2.3 Master's programmes

- a) Master's programmes are taken in a particular major of the preceding bachelor's or honours degree.
- b) The MSc, MSc (Agric), MScAgric, MScFor, MSc Food Sc, MScConsEcol or MAgric (Agri-business Management) can be awarded to you if you –
  - have an applicable bachelor's degree of this University or a bachelor's degree approved for this purpose by Senate, and on written application have been admitted by Senate to the particular programme with a minimum study period of one year, or hold an applicable honours degree of this University or a similar honours degree approved for this purpose by Senate, and on written application have been admitted by Senate to the particular programme with a minimum study period of one year;
  - have followed an approved curriculum of advanced study and/or research, which may include a period of study or research at some other place recognised by Senate;
  - have passed the prescribed examination(s);
  - have submitted a complete and well-written thesis or assignment which shows that you have performed independent scientific and technical investigations and interpreted the results satisfactorily;
  - included a statement in the thesis or assignment that the thesis or assignment has not been submitted to another university in order to obtain a degree and that it is your own work; and
  - have satisfactorily taken an oral examination. In certain instances, supplementary study may be required of you.
- c) You must also satisfy all other regulations regarding theses or assignments for master's degrees. See Postgraduate qualifications in Part 1 (General Rules) of the University's Yearbook.

## 2.4 PhD or PhD (Agric) degree programmes

- a) The degree PhD or PhD (Agric) can be awarded to you if you –
  - have the degree MSc, MSc (Agric), MScAgric, MScConsEcol, MScFor, MSc Food Sc, MAgric (Agri-business Management) or MPhil of this University, or another university's degree approved by Senate for this purpose;
  - after Senate's approval of your proposed research project, have carried out and completed, to the satisfaction of the University, original research under supervision of a supervisor for at least two years after obtaining the said master's degree at Stellenbosch University or at another place approved by the University;
  - have completed any supplementary study as may be required by Senate to the satisfaction of the University;
  - have submitted a complete and well-written dissertation which shows that you have made a particular contribution to the enrichment of knowledge in the chosen field, with proof of independent critical judgement and accompanied by a declaration that the dissertation has not been submitted to another university in order to obtain a degree and that it is your own work; and
  - have taken an oral examination to the satisfaction of the University, provided that, subject to approval by Senate, exemption from this examination may be granted in special cases.
  - In addition, examiners may require a written examination.
- b) As a candidate for the PhD or PhD (Agric) degree you must be enrolled for at least two academic years before the degree can be awarded to you.
- c) Your application for admission must include particulars of qualifications (accompanied by certified copies of certificates if the qualifications were not awarded by Stellenbosch University), the location and extent of the research, and the subject of the dissertation.
- d) The supervisor will be appointed once your application has been approved.

*Please note:* As to the date of submission of the dissertation, the number of copies to be submitted, as well as other requirements which need to be satisfied before the degree can be awarded, the general rules and regulations as given in the section Postgraduate Qualifications in Part 1 (General Rules) of the University's Yearbook apply.

## 3. Provisions regarding enrolment for programmes

### 3.1 Periods of enrolment for master's and doctoral studies

**Table**

Programme	The year of enrolment					
	1	2	3	4	5	6
MSc full-time	M	N	F	X	-	-
PhD full-time	M	M	N	F	X	-

The Faculty does not offer part-time postgraduate studies, but in exceptional cases, students can motivate for extension of their studies based on personal circumstances. If approval is granted in your case, you will only be allowed to extend the studies to N+2 years (X). See table above.

#### Legend

<b>M</b>	Minimum enrolment period
<b>N</b>	Normal maximum enrolment period
<b>F</b>	Final concessional year (May register without having to apply for readmission)
<b>X</b>	Enrolment only if readmission has been approved by the Faculty Board or, for PhDs, Senate (Allowed in exceptional circumstances)
<b>-</b>	Further registration not allowed

**Please note:** In the case of a conversion from master's to doctoral studies, the first registration for the PhD is considered the start of the enrolment.

### 3.2 Continued enrolment during the maximum period of enrolment

You must register as a student every year for the full duration of your studies, until you are awarded the degree, except if the Faculty Board approves an interruption of your studies (see section "Interruption of master's and doctoral studies" in Part 1 (General Rules) of Yearbook). You must make sufficient progress in your studies each year to be permitted to register again. If your progress is insufficient, the relevant departmental chairperson may recommend to the Faculty Board that the Board prevent you from continuing your postgraduate studies.

### 3.3 Continued enrolment after the maximum period of enrolment

After the normal maximum enrolment period (status F), you may only re-register as a postgraduate student if a departmental panel recommends approving your application to continue (status X). Such approval will only be granted more than once in exceptional circumstances.

## 4. Postgraduate programmes per department

### 4.1 Department of Agricultural Economics

#### Closing dates for all postgraduate applications in the Department

International students: Apply by 14 September of the previous year.

South African students: Apply by 31 October of the previous year.

#### 4.1.1 BAgricHons (Agri-business Management)

##### Programme Code

2771001

##### Specific Admission Requirements

- The three-year BAgric (Agri-business Management) degree, an applicable three-year degree, as well as other qualifications that Senate has approved for this purpose.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.

## Duration of Programme

This programme extends over one year.

## Programme Content

The programme is designed to equip prospective expert agricultural managers and agricultural economists with high level skills in the use of agricultural economics and agricultural management techniques, including the analysis of the limitations and potential of the agricultural sector. After the successful completion of the programme you will be able to analyse more complex problem situations and to create more sophisticated farming or agribusiness systems and/or make sophisticated agricultural policy recommendations. This expertise is necessary in order to ensure the international competitiveness of South African agriculture and related industries, and also to enable South Africa to play its rightful role in the agricultural sector in Africa.

Agricultural Economics forms the central component of the programme. The programme focuses on the management of agriculture-related enterprises.

## Compulsory Module

15504: Agricultural Economics	781(30): Research assignment: Agricultural Economics
-------------------------------	--

plus

## Elective Modules

Choose modules to the value of at least 90 credits from the table below. You can choose from the honours modules following the 300-level of your other major subject(s) up to a maximum of 32 credits, subject to the approval of the relevant department, to contribute to a minimum of 120 credits.

15504: Agricultural Economics	750(20): Institutional economics
15504: Agricultural Economics	770(20): Food and fibre value chain management
15504: Agricultural Economics	771(20): Farm management
15504: Agricultural Economics	772(20): Topical issues in agricultural policy
15504: Agricultural Economics	773(20): Wine marketing
15504: Agricultural Economics	774(20): General equilibrium models for policy analysis
15504: Agricultural Economics	775(20): Agricultural production and resource management
15504: Agricultural Economics	776(20): International trade and marketing
15504: Agricultural Economics	780(20): Rural development
15504: Agricultural Economics	782(16): National and international market analysis
15504: Agricultural Economics	784(16): Environmental policy
15504: Agricultural Economics	785(16): Agricultural policy in the South African context
15504: Agricultural Economics	786(16): Farm investment and finance management

## Assessment and Examination

Modules are assessed by means of practical and written assignments, tests and written examinations in June and November.

## Enquiries

Prof A Jooste

Tel: 021 808 4899

E-mail: joostea@sun.ac.za

## Master's programme in Agricultural Economics and Management

The master's programme in Agricultural Economics and Management leads to one of the following qualifications: **MScAgric (Agricultural Economics and Management)** or **MAgric (Agricultural Economics)**.

### 4.1.2 MAgric (Agri-business Management)

#### Programme Code

2781011

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- The one-year BAgricHons degree, as well as other qualifications that Senate has approved for this purpose.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.

#### Programme Description

After completion of the degree BAgricHons you can apply for admission to the degree MAgric (Agricultural Economics). The programme consists of a research component and is designed to develop your ability to undertake independent research in terms of problem-solving, multidisciplinary approaches and scientific scholarship. After completion of the programme you will be able to carry out independent investigations in selected aspects of the agricultural and related sectors. The research component focuses on the management of agriculture-related industries and agricultural economic analysis. Independent research must be carried out on a suitable topic within the broad framework of agricultural potential assessment, international competitiveness or structural changes in agriculture.

#### Programme Content

##### Compulsory Module

15504: Agricultural Economics	818(180): Master's thesis
-------------------------------	---------------------------

#### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

#### Enquiries

Prof A Jooste

Tel: 021 808 4899

E-mail: joostea@sun.ac.za

### 4.1.3 MScAgric in Agricultural Economics and Management

#### Programme Code

2731011

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable BScAgric degree.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.

#### Programme Description

After completion of the BScAgric degree in Agricultural Economics and Management you will be able to apply for admission to the degree MScAgric (Agricultural Economics and Management). The programme consists of a research component and is designed to develop your ability to undertake independent research in terms of problem-solving, multidisciplinary approaches and scientific scholarship. After completion of the programme you will be able to carry out independent investigations in selected aspects of the agricultural and related sectors. The research component focuses on the management of agriculture-related industries and agricultural economic analysis. You must carry out independent research on a suitable topic within the broad framework of agricultural potential assessment, international competitiveness or structural changes in agriculture. Advanced coursework, preceding the thesis, is required.

## Programme Content

### Compulsory Module

15504: Agricultural Economics	873(120): MScAgric (Agricultural Economics and Management)
-------------------------------	--

### FIRST YEAR (60 CREDITS)

#### Elective Modules

Choose modules to the value of at least 60 credits from the table below.

15504: Agricultural Economics	850(15): Institutional economics
15504: Agricultural Economics	880(15): Analysis of food and fibre value chains
15504: Agricultural Economics	884(15): Rural development
15504: Agricultural Economics	885(15): Applied SAM based modelling
15504: Agricultural Economics	891(15): Strategic farm management
15504: Agricultural Economics	892(15): Agricultural policy analysis
15504: Agricultural Economics	893(15): Strategic marketing of wine
15504: Agricultural Economics	894(15): Topical issues in agricultural resource use
15504: Agricultural Economics	895(15): Agricultural production economics and decision analysis
15504: Agricultural Economics	896(15): International trade and marketing strategies

### SECOND YEAR (120 CREDITS)

#### Compulsory Module

15504: Agricultural Economics	873(120): Master's thesis
-------------------------------	---------------------------

#### Assessment and Examination

Modules are assessed by means of practical and written assignments, tests and written examinations in June and November.

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

#### Enquiries

Prof A Jooste

Tel: 021 808 4899

E-mail: joostea@sun.ac.za

### 4.1.4 PhD in Agricultural Economics and Management or PhD (Agric)

#### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

#### Programme Description

The programme focuses strongly on research and is designed to develop high-level skills in the use of Agricultural Economic and Agricultural Management techniques, including the analysis of the limitations and potential of the agricultural sector, in students who wish to become agricultural economists or management experts in the private or public sector. This expertise is necessary to ensure the international competitiveness of South African agricultural and related industries, and to enable South Africa to play its rightful role in the development of the agricultural sector in Africa. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

## Programme Content

### Compulsory Module

15504: Agricultural Economics	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
-------------------------------	---------------------------------

### Assessment and Examination

Note that the programme has a substantial residential requirement. After completion of the research you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

### Enquiries

Prof A Jooste

Tel: 021 808 4899

E-mail: joostea@sun.ac.za

## 4.2 Department of Agronomy

### 4.2.1 Postgraduate Diploma in Agronomy

#### Programme Code

6431001

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- Three-year BSc degree, pre-HEQSF BTech degrees or Advanced Diplomas at NQF level 7 in a relevant field of study, and other qualifications deemed equivalent as approved by Senate

#### Closing Date for Applications

Apply by 14 September of the previous year.

#### Programme Structure

The primary purpose of a Postgraduate Diploma is to strengthen and deepen students' knowledge in a particular domain of practice with a specific focus on equipping working professionals with the knowledge, skills and attributes to solve workplace-based problems.

If you have obtained this qualification, you may apply for entry to the MScAgric in Agronomy. However, admission is not guaranteed since the purpose of the Postgraduate Diploma differs from research-based qualifications such as an Honours degree or Master's degree. Postgraduate Diploma graduates will be screened using the admission requirements for the MScAgric in Agronomy.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over one year full-time, or two years part-time.

### Programme Content

#### Full-time offering:

All modules are compulsory. If you are completing the programme in one year full-time, you must take all modules together.

13327: Crops for extensive production systems	711(18): Crops for extensive production systems
13328: Physiological and ecological principles of natural pasture management	712(18): Physiological and ecological principles of natural pasture management
55565 Agronomy	764(8): Advanced weed management for annual and perennial crops
55565 Agronomy	763(8): Production physiology and technology for annual agronomical crops
55565 Agronomy	711(8): Production physiology and technology for intensive crop production systems



55565 Agronomy	772(10): Agronomy practical for field crops
55565 Agronomy	771(6): Agronomy practical for intensive production systems
55565 Agronomy	765(8): Precision agriculture in field crops
13335: Agronomy Science Project	772(30): Agronomy Science Project
55565 Agronomy	773(6): Professional development and research skills

#### Part-time offering:

All modules are compulsory. If you are completing the programme in two years part-time, you must take the following modules each year, as indicated below:

### YEAR 1

13327: Crops for extensive production systems	711(18): Crops for extensive production systems
55565 Agronomy	764(8): Advanced weed management for annual and perennial crops
55565 Agronomy	772(10): Agronomy practical for field crops
55565 Agronomy	763(8): Production physiology and technology for annual agronomical crops
55565 Agronomy	765(8): Precision agriculture in field crops
55565 Agronomy	773(6): Professional development and research skills
13335: Agronomy Science Project	772(30): Agronomy Science Project

### YEAR 2

55565 Agronomy	711(8): Production physiology and technology for intensive crop production systems
55565 Agronomy	771(6): Agronomy practical for intensive production systems
13328: Physiological and ecological principles of natural pasture management	712(18): Physiological and ecological principles of natural pasture management
13335: Agronomy Science Project	772(30): Agronomy Science Project

## Assessment and Examination

Modules are assessed by means of practical and written assignments and tests.

## Enquiries

Prof PA Swanepoel

Tel: 021 808 4668

E-mail: [pieterswanepoel@sun.ac.za](mailto:pieterswanepoel@sun.ac.za)

## 4.2.2 MScAgric in Agronomy

### Programme Code

2731011

### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable four-year BScAgric degree (NQF level 8).
- An average final mark of 60% for all final year subjects.
- A mark of more than 60% for the scientific aptitude test.

## Duration of Programme

This programme extends over a minimum of one year but may take longer to complete.

## Programme Content

Research on a particular aspect of tillage, weed control, crop production, stress physiology, vegetable production or pasture management is undertaken. The modular component of the programme is aimed at the acquisition of generic research skills to support the research component of the programme. A further objective is the deepening of subject knowledge on general crop physiology through self-study.

## Compulsory Modules

55565: Agronomy	828(172): Master's thesis
11061: Biometry	821(8): Biometrical applications

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof PA Swanepoel

Tel: 021 808 4668

E-mail: pieterswanepoel@sun.ac.za

### 4.2.3 MSc (Agric)

## Programme Code

5981001

## Specific Admission Requirements

- A suitable four-year Bachelor's (Agric) degree (NQF level 8), or a three-year bachelor's degree (NQF level 7) and an applicable postgraduate qualification (BScHons) in any of the major subjects that are accompanied by agriculture.
- An average final mark of 60% for all final-year subjects.
- A mark of more than 60% for the scientific aptitude test.

## Duration of Programme

This programme extends over a minimum of one year but may take longer to complete.

## Programme Content

Research on a particular aspect of tillage, weed control, crop production, stress physiology, vegetable production or pasture management is undertaken. The modular component of the programme is aimed at the acquisition of generic research skills to support the research component of the programme. A further objective is the deepening of subject knowledge on general crop physiology through self-study.

## Compulsory Modules

14015: Agriculture	818(172): Master's thesis
11061: Biometry	821(8): Biometrical applications

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof PA Swanepoel

Tel: 021 808 4668

E-mail: [pieterswanepoel@sun.ac.za](mailto:pieterswanepoel@sun.ac.za)

### 4.2.4 PhD in Agronomy or PhD (Agric)

#### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

#### Programme Description

You must carry out a relevant and practically oriented research project in Agronomy, leading to innovation or problem-solving through high-level research in Agronomy and in the industry concerned. This will equip you at the highest academic level with the knowledge and expertise you need for entering the research industry or professional field. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

#### Programme Content

##### Compulsory Module

55565: Agronomy	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
-----------------	---------------------------------

#### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof PA Swanepoel

Tel: 021 808 4668

E-mail: [pieterswanepoel@sun.ac.za](mailto:pieterswanepoel@sun.ac.za)

## 4.3 Department of Animal Sciences

### 4.3.1 Postgraduate Diploma in Aquaculture

#### Programme Code

6021001

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable three-year BSc degree.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.
- A high level of theoretical engagement will be expected of you to increase your competency to the level of a four-year bachelor's degree in Agriculture at NQF level 8.

#### Closing Date for Applications

Apply by 14 September of the previous year.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over one year.

#### Programme Content

The postgraduate diploma in Aquaculture is designed to expand and strengthen your knowledge in the discipline of Aquaculture. In addition, you will be introduced to research methodology and your writing and presentation skills will be developed.

## Compulsory Modules

46213: Aquaculture	711(16): Aquaculture production and management systems I
46213: Aquaculture	741(16): Aquaculture production and management systems II
12910: Aquaculture Management Science	724(16): Aquaculture review, assessment and project development I
12910: Aquaculture Management Science	754(16): Aquaculture review, assessment and project development II
20826: Animal Science	772(24): Scientific skills in Animal Science

plus

## Elective Modules

Choose two of the modules below.

46213: Aquaculture	712(16): Aquaculture products
46213: Aquaculture	713(16): Introduction to aquaponics production systems
46213: Aquaculture	742(16): Aquaculture ecology
46213: Aquaculture	743(16): Aquaculture nutrition
46213: Aquaculture	745(16): Advanced aquaponics technologies

## Assessment and Examination

Modules are assessed by means of practical and written assignments, tests and written examinations in June and November.

## Enquiries

Dr JHC van Zyl

Tel: 021 808 4746

E-mail: brinkvz@sun.ac.za

## 4.3.2 MScAgric in Animal Science

### Programme Code

2731011

### Specific Admission Requirements

- The BScAgric degree with an average final mark of at least 60% for the third- and fourth-year modules.
- The Department can expect you to be interviewed prior to admission.

Your application is subject to approval by the Department of Animal Sciences.

### Programme Content

The master's programme consists of a research component of 100% (180 credits) but you could, in consultation with your supervisor, be requested to follow additional modules, including Biometry 821 (Biometrical Applications).

Research is possible in the following fields:

- increase in the efficiency of animal production and animal products;
- the improvement of product quality in the farming of large and small livestock, and poultry;
- increase in the efficiency and production of alternative animal species; and
- intensive and extensive aquaculture systems, feeding and breeding.

## Programme Outcomes

After successful completion of the theoretical modules, you will be able to:

- analyse, consequent to the bachelor's programme, more complex problem situations and create and/or make suggestions towards increasingly sophisticated stock farming or intensive animal production systems;
- combine integrated knowledge in the fields of specialisation of animal breeding, animal nutrition, animal physiology and animal products to enable problem-solving;
- plan and execute research trials, analyse data and report research projects in a scientific manner;
- generate new knowledge using fundamental animal husbandry and scientific principles; and
- obtain further postgraduate qualifications at various national and international institutions.

## Compulsory Module

20826: Animal Science	818(180): Master's thesis
-----------------------	---------------------------

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Dr JHC van Zyl

Tel: 021 808 4746

E-mail: brinkvz@sun.ac.za

## 4.3.3 PhD in Animal Production Systems or PhD (Agric)

### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

### Programme Description

The programme focuses strongly on research and aims to discover new insights and knowledge in the field of Animal Production Systems. This knowledge increases your general intellectual and professional skills and promotes your adaptability to carry out advanced research in a specific field of study that links up with other fields of study. The programme will equip you at the highest academic level for entering the research industry or professional field. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

### Programme Content

#### Compulsory Module

20826: Animal Science	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
-----------------------	---------------------------------

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Dr JHC van Zyl

Tel: 021 808 4746

E-mail: brinkvz@sun.ac.za

## 4.4 Department of Conservation Ecology and Entomology

### 4.4.1 Programmes in Conservation Ecology

#### 4.4.1.1 MSc in Conservation Ecology

##### Programme Code

5461021

##### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable BScHons degree, BScAgric degree or BScConsEcol degree.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.

##### Programme Content

The research component (minimum time span six months, 180 credits at NQF level 9) entails independent research on an approved topic in Conservation Ecology that you conduct under a supervisor. As part of the process, you must present a seminar to the Department of Conservation Ecology and Entomology on your proposed thesis. On completion of the research, you must write up your results and submit them in the format of a thesis. The thesis must meet the requirements for a master's thesis as prescribed by the Department of Conservation Ecology and Entomology and Stellenbosch University.

##### Compulsory Module

55638: Conservation Ecology	818(180): Master's thesis
-----------------------------	---------------------------

##### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

##### Enquiries

Prof F Roets

Tel: 021 808 2635

E-mail: fr@sun.ac.za

#### 4.4.1.2 PhD with specialisation in Conservation Ecology or PhD (Agric)

##### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

##### Programme Description

You must carry out a relevant and practically oriented research project in Conservation Ecology, leading to innovation or problem-solving through high-level research in Conservation Ecology and in the industry concerned. This will equip you at the highest academic level with the knowledge and expertise you need for entering the research industry or professional field. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

##### Programme Content

##### Compulsory Module

55638: Conservation Ecology	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
-----------------------------	---------------------------------

##### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof F Roets  
Tel: 021 808 2635  
E-mail: fr@sun.ac.za

## 4.4.2 Programmes in Entomology

### 4.4.2.1 MSc or MScAgric in Entomology

#### Programme Code

5981001 or 2731011

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- The BScAgric degree or a BScHons in a suitable subject field.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over a minimum of one year but may take longer to complete.

#### Programme Content

You determine your topic for the master's degree in consultation with the lecturer concerned. You can select a topic from fields which include morphology and systematics, insect conservation ecology and integrated pest management of insects.

#### Compulsory Module

34576: Entomology	818(180): Master's thesis
-------------------	---------------------------

#### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof F Roets  
Tel: 021 808 2635  
E-mail: fr@sun.ac.za

### 4.4.2.2 PhD in Entomology or PhD (Agric)

#### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

#### Programme Description

You must carry out a relevant and practically oriented research project in Entomology, leading to innovation or problem-solving through high-level research in Entomology and in the industry concerned. This will equip you at the highest academic level with the knowledge and expertise you need for entering the research industry or professional field. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

#### Programme Content

#### Compulsory Module

34576: Entomology	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
-------------------	---------------------------------

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof F Roets

Tel: 021 808 2635

E-mail: fr@sun.ac.za

## 4.4.3 Programmes in Nematology

### 4.4.3.1 MSc or MScAgric in Nematology

#### Programme Code

5981001 or 2731011

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- A BScAgric degree or a BScHons degree in a suitable subject field.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over a minimum of one year but may take longer to complete.

#### Programme Content

You determine your topic for the master's degree programme in consultation with the lecturer concerned. You can select a topic from fields which include morphology and systematics, biological control and integrated pest management of insects.

#### Compulsory Module

43850: Nematology	818 / 878 (180): Master's thesis
-------------------	----------------------------------

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof F Roets

Tel: 021 808 2635

E-mail: fr@sun.ac.za

### 4.4.3.2 PhD in Nematology or PhD (Agric)

#### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

#### Programme Description

You must carry out a relevant and practically oriented research project in Nematology, leading to innovation or problem-solving through high-level research in Nematology and in the industry concerned. This will equip you at the highest academic level with the knowledge and expertise you need for entering the research industry or professional field. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.



## Programme Content

### Compulsory Module

43850: Nematology	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
-------------------	---------------------------------

### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

### Enquiries

Prof F Roets

Tel: 021 808 2635

E-mail: fr@sun.ac.za

## 4.5 Department of Food Science

### 4.5.1 MSc in Food Science

#### Programme Code

2841011

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- A four-year BSc in Food Science degree, a three-year BSc Food Science degree with a BScHons in Food Science, or a three-year BSc with Chemistry or Biochemistry on final-year level with an honours degree.
- Supplementary Food Science modules, as prescribed by the Department of Food Science, must be taken if you only qualify for the three-year BSc with Chemistry or Biochemistry on final-year level with an honours degree.
- An average final mark of 60% for the final-year modules.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over a minimum of one year but may take longer to complete.

### Programme Content

You choose your research project for the master's programme in consultation with your supervisor.

### Compulsory Module

21210: Food Science	818(180): Master's thesis
---------------------	---------------------------

### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

### Enquiries

Prof GO Sigge

Tel: 021 808 3581

E-mail: gos@sun.ac.za

## 4.5.2 MSc in Food and Nutrition Security

### Programme Code

6591001

### Specific Admission Requirements

- A professional bachelor's or honours degree in an applicable Agricultural Science, Health Science or Natural Science field that is on NQF level 8. You must achieve a minimum average mark of 60% over the four years of study.

### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over a minimum of two years.

### Application Process and Closing date

If you are a prospective South African student, you must apply online at <https://www.su.ac.za/en/apply/pg-studies> by 30 September of the previous year.

If you are a prospective international student, you must apply online at <https://www.su.ac.za/en/apply/pg-studies> by 31 August of the previous year.

*Please note:* Only a certain number of students are selected each year.

### Programme Content

This structured programme is presented mainly by means of technology-mediated teaching and learning, in combination with courses presented on campus. This programme comprises twelve theoretical modules and a research assignment (33% of the total credits). If the academic year extends over 45 weeks, it is expected of the student to utilise 20 notional hours per week, over a two-year period, to complete the programme.

#### FIRST YEAR

##### Compulsory Modules

13255: Conceptualising food systems	811(10): Conceptualising food systems
13256: Food safety, hazards & risks	812(10): Food safety, hazards & risks
13257: Human economic development	813(10): Human economic development
13258: Agriculture-nutrition linkages	814(10): Agriculture-nutrition linkages
13259: Food processing & preservation	815(10): Food processing & preservation
13261: Introduction to epidemiology	841(10): Introduction to epidemiology
13262: Macro- & micronutrients & health	842(10): Macro- & micronutrients & health
13263: Functional Foods & Alternative Proteins	843(10): Functional Foods & Alternative Proteins
13264: Food chains and consumers	844(10): Food chains and consumers

#### SECOND YEAR

##### Compulsory Modules

13265: Assessing food security	821(10): Assessing food security
13266: Food security project analysis	822(10): Food security project analysis
13267: Food & nutrition policies	823(10): Food & nutrition policies
13533: Research assignment (Human Nutrition)	841(60): Research assignment (Human Nutrition)
OR	
13534: Research assignment (Agricultural Economics)	842(60): Research assignment (Agricultural Economics)
OR	
13535: Research assignment (Food Science)	843(60): Research assignment (Food Science)

## Assessment and Examination

- The final mark for each theoretical module will consist of a class mark which is compiled through flexible assessment (i.e. various assessments, which could include: STEMLearn/FHMSLearn discussions, assignments, tasks, quizzes, oral presentations. Specific assessment criteria will be detailed in each module's module framework).
- You will only be permitted two attempts at completing the theoretical modules. If you fail to pass a module after these two attempts, you will not be readmitted to the programme.
- You must obtain a minimum of 50% to pass all individual modules.
- The final mark for the research assignment will be calculated as follows:
  - 20% for the protocol
  - 80% for the research assignment; and
- The final mark for the degree programme will be calculated as follows:
  - Course work 67%
  - Research assignment 33%
- You will be allowed to register for the research assignment for a maximum of three years. If you fail to complete the research assignment within this time, your performance will be officially reviewed by the programme committee, and you may be denied the right to reregister for the programme.

## Enquiries

Prof GO Sigge  
Tel: 021 808 3581  
E-mail: gos@sun.ac.za

## 4.5.3 PhD in Food Science

### Programme Code

5471001

### Programme Description

The doctoral programme in Food Science is at least two years, but depending on the field of study could take longer to complete. You choose a relevant research project in consultation with your supervisor. The programme contributes at a high level to the Faculty of AgriSciences' research profile and delivers professional individuals who can play an important role in teams with regards to research, teaching and policy-making in the speciality areas of sustainable food and nutrition security in an environmentally friendly manner. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

### Programme Content

#### Compulsory Module

21210: Food Science	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
---------------------	---------------------------------

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof GO Sigge  
Tel: 021 808 3581  
E-mail: gos@sun.ac.za

## 4.6 Department of Forest and Wood Science

### 4.6.1 Postgraduate Diploma in Forestry and Wood Sciences

#### Programme Code

6031001

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- A three-year BSc or BTech degree in Science or Engineering or other relevant qualifications that Senate has approved for this purpose.
- A minimum final mark average of 60% in all modules

#### Closing Date for Applications

Apply by 14 September of the previous year.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme is completed over one year of full-time study.

You are expected to be present on campus for the duration of the programme, although exceptions may be considered on a case-by-case basis in special circumstances.

#### Programme Content

The programme consists of an approved curriculum which lays the foundation for specialisation in forestry and wood sciences disciplines.

#### Compulsory Module

Choose one of the compulsory modules.

11290: Forest Science	780(24): Forest science project
57584: Wood Product Science	784(24): Wood products science project

**plus**

#### Elective Modules

Choose elective modules to the value of 96 credits of which a minimum of 32 credits must be from the field of Wood Product Science and a minimum of 32 credits from the field of Forest Science.

11290: Forest Science	771(32): Applied geo-information sciences
11290: Forest Science	772(32): Silviculture
11290: Forest Science	773(32): Timber harvesting and transport logistics
11290: Forest Science	774(32): Forest inventory and yield prediction
11290: Forest Science	775(32): Forest management
11290: Forest Science	776(32): Tree improvement and propagation
57584: Wood Product Science	781(32): Wood properties and quality
57584: Wood Product Science	782(32): Primary wood processing
57584: Wood Product Science	783(32): Bio-energy

#### Assessment and Examination

Modules are assessed by means of practical and written assignments, tests as well as flexible assessment.

#### Enquiries

Prof B Talbot

Tel: 021 808 3293

E-mail: bruce@sun.ac.za

## 4.6.2 Programmes in Forestry and Wood Sciences

### 4.6.2.1 MSc in Forestry and Natural Resource Sciences or Wood and Wood Products Sciences

#### Programme Code

6221001

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- The four-year BScFor degree, the postgraduate diploma in Forestry and Wood Sciences, an applicable honours degree, as well as other qualifications that Senate has approved for this purpose.
- A minimum final mark of 60% in all modules or in the major module that is applicable to the postgraduate field of study. The Department can decide to deviate from this requirement.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over one year after the four-year BScFor degree.

#### Programme Content

The master's programme consists of a 100% research component (180 credits) but you could, in consultation with your supervisor, be requested to follow additional modules, including Biometry 821 (Biometrical Applications).

#### Compulsory Modules

Choose one of the modules below.

11290: Forest Science	818(180): Master's thesis
57584: Wood Product Science	818(180): Master's thesis

#### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

#### Enquiries

Prof B Talbot

Tel: 021 808 3293

E-mail: bruce@sun.ac.za

### 4.6.2.2 PhD in Forestry and Wood Sciences or PhD (Agric)

#### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

#### Programme Description

This programme leads to the qualification PhD (For) in Forestry and Natural Resource Sciences or Wood and Wood Products Sciences. The programme focuses on research in various specialist fields of forestry and ensures that students become specialists in these fields.

You must carry out a relevant and practically oriented research project in Forestry and Natural Resource Sciences, leading to innovation or problem-solving through high-level research in Forestry and Natural Resource Sciences and in the industry concerned. The research project will equip you at the highest academic level with the knowledge and expertise you need for entering the research industry or professional field. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

## Programme Content

### Compulsory Modules

11290: Forest Science	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
57584: Wood Product Science	978(360): Doctoral dissertation

### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

### Enquiries

Prof B Talbot

Tel: 021 808 3293

E-mail: bruce@sun.ac.za

## 4.7 Department of Genetics

### 4.7.1 Programmes in Genetics

#### 4.7.1.1 BScHons in Genetics

##### Programme Code

13285 – 778 (120)

##### Specific Admission Requirements

- A BSc degree with Genetics 214, 244 plus 314, 324, 344 and 354 or equivalent modules at other universities.
- An average mark of at least 65% in Genetics in the final year.

##### Closing Date for Applications

Apply online at <https://student.sun.ac.za> by the end of October of the previous year. The number of students admitted to this programme annually will be determined by available research laboratory space.

##### Duration of Programme

The duration of the programme is one academic year and begins at the start of the general academic year.

### Programme Content

The programme consists of the six modules listed below. Subject to departmental approval, you may substitute two of the 8-credit theory modules with equivalent 8-credit modules from the BScHons in Plant Biotechnology. You must also complete a research assignment and present the results in the form of a research publication. The Department places strong emphasis on acquiring laboratory skills. As an honours student you are expected to attend departmental seminars and to act as an undergraduate demonstrator.

### Compulsory Modules

10481: Genetics: Molecular Techniques	711(16): Genetics: Molecular Techniques
10478: Genetic Data Analysis	713(8): Genetic Data Analysis
11061: Biometrical Applications and Data Analysis in R	721(8): Biometrical Applications and Data Analysis in R
13594: Genomics	716(8): Genomics
13538: Scientific and Proposal Writing	721(8): Scientific and Proposal Writing
18007: Project	741(64): Honours Project in Genetics

plus

## Elective Module

Choose one of the following modules.

13596: Human and Animal Genetics	712(8): Human and Animal Genetics
13537: Plant Genetics and Crop Improvement	722(8): Plant Genetics and Crop Improvement

## Assessment and Examination

The programme is assessed by means of flexible assessment. To complete the honours programme successfully, you must complete the compulsory molecular techniques module, all prescribed theory modules and a research project successfully.

## Enquiries

Prof C Rhode  
Tel: 021 808 5834  
E-mail: clintr@sun.ac.za

### 4.7.1.2 MScAgric in Genetics

#### Programme Code

2731011

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable BScAgric or BScHons degree.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over a minimum of one year but may take longer to complete.

#### Programme Content

Research projects cover different aspects of plant breeding such as:

- biometrical applications in data analysis;
- genotype-environment interactions;
- the application or modification of conventional plant breeding methodology;
- the application of cytogenetic procedures;
- biochemical and molecular markers for the location, mapping and tagging of useful genes;
- genotyping and marker-assisted selection;
- transfer of genes from wild related species to cultivated cereals employing wide crossings; and
- cytogenetic manipulations or direct gene transfer by means of genetic engineering.

#### Compulsory Module

13285: Genetics	818(180): Master's thesis
-----------------	---------------------------

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof C Rhode  
Tel: 021 808 5834  
E-mail: clintr@sun.ac.za

### 4.7.1.3 MSc in Genetics

#### Programme Code

13285 – 879(180)

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable honours degree preferably in Botany, Genetics, Microbiology, Biochemistry, Zoology, Animal Science or Plant Biotechnology; or a relevant four-year BScAgric degree in Plant or Animal Production Systems with Plant, Animal Breeding or Genetics as a subject major.
- An average final mark of 60% for the honours degree, or subject major in the case of a BScAgric degree.

#### Programme Structure

The programme consists of research on an approved topic as determined by the Department. You must submit a satisfactory thesis on completion of the work. The Department can require supplementary module(s) depending on your background.

See also Section 2.2 in Yearbook Part 5 (Faculty of Science) for general information on the MSc degree at the Faculty of Science and Section 2.3 in this Yearbook part for general information on the MSc degree at the Faculty of AgriSciences.

#### Compulsory Module

62448: Genetics	828(180): Master's thesis: Genetics
-----------------	-------------------------------------

#### Assessment and Examination

An oral examination is required.

#### Enquiries

Prof C Rhode

Tel: 021 808 5834

E-mail: clintr@sun.ac.za

### 4.7.1.4 PhD in Genetics or PhD (Agric)

#### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

#### Programme Description

You must carry out a relevant and practically oriented research project in Genetics, leading to innovation or problem-solving through high-level research in Genetics and in the industry concerned. The research project will equip you at the highest academic level with the knowledge and expertise you need for entering the research industry or professional field. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

#### Programme Content

#### Compulsory Module

13285: Genetics	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
-----------------	---------------------------------

#### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.



## Enquiries

Prof C Rhode

Tel: 021 808 5834

E-mail: clintr@sun.ac.za

## 4.7.2 Programmes in Plant Biotechnology

### 4.7.2.1 BScHons in Plant Biotechnology

#### Programme Code

53287 – 788 (120)

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- A BSc degree approved by the Departmental Postgraduate and Academic Committees with an average final mark of at least 60% in the appropriate modules at third-year level. Suitable modules include Biotechnology, Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology.
- You are, however, strongly encouraged to take Genetics 314, 315, 344 and 345 for admission to the honours in Plant Biotechnology.
- Additional work may be prescribed depending on your background.

#### Closing Date for Applications

Apply online at <https://www.su.ac.za/en/apply/pg-studies>. The number of students admitted to this programme is determined by available research laboratory space.

#### Duration of Programme

The duration of the programme is one academic year and begins at the start of the general academic year.

#### Programme Content

The programme introduces you to advanced concepts and skills in Plant Biotechnology needed for a career as a plant biotechnologist or a researcher. Emphasis is placed on the following three aspects in the educational process:

- The development of a satisfactory knowledge base;
- The development of a wide-ranging practical and theoretical capability; and
- The development of a professional scientific-methodological and ethical approach.

The programme includes theoretical work, seminars, practical tasks, independent research and independent consultation of the broader biological literature. As an honours student you are expected to attend departmental seminars and to act as an undergraduate demonstrator.

The theory modules consist of a series of contact sessions where information is exchanged by means of discussion groups, seminars, assignments and reading assignments. The module leaders will serve as facilitators, guiding students rather than teaching them.

You can substitute two of the 8-credit theory modules with equivalent 8-credit modules from the BScHons in Genetics programme. All substitutions must be approved by the Department.

#### Compulsory Modules

10481: Genetics: Molecular Techniques	715(16): Genetics: Molecular Techniques
13594: Genomics	716(8): Genomics
13538: Scientific and Proposal Writing	721(8): Scientific and Proposal Writing
13537: Plant Genetics and Crop Improvement	722(8): Plant Genetics and Crop Improvement
12582: Research Module in Plant Biotechnology	790(64): Research Module in Plant Biotechnology

plus

## Elective Modules

Choose two of the following modules.

17523: Plant Physiology	712(8): Plant Physiology
10475: Integrated Plant Metabolism	713(8): Integrated Plant Metabolism
11061: Biometrical Applications and Data Analysis in R	721(8): Biometrical Applications and Data Analysis in R

## Assessment and Examination

- The programme is assessed by means of flexible assessment.
- To complete the honours programme successfully, you must complete the compulsory molecular techniques module, all prescribed theory modules and a research project successfully.

## Enquiries

Prof C Rhode

Tel: 021 808 5834

E-mail: clintr@sun.ac.za

### 4.7.2.2 MSc in Plant Biotechnology

#### Programme Code

53287 – 879 (180)

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable honours degree preferably in Botany, Genetics, Microbiology, Biochemistry or Plant Biotechnology.

#### Programme Structure

The programme consists of research on an approved topic as determined by the Department. You must submit a satisfactory thesis on completion of the work. The Department can require supplementary module(s) depending on your background.

See also Section 2.2 in Yearbook Part 5 (Faculty of Science) for general information on the MSc degree at the Faculty of Science and Section 2.3 in this Yearbook part for general information on the MSc degree at the Faculty of AgriSciences.

#### Compulsory Module

66311: Thesis Plant Biotechnology	828(180): Thesis Plant Biotechnology
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

## Assessment and Examination

An oral examination is required.

## Enquiries

Prof C Rhode

Tel: 021 808 5834

E-mail: clintr@sun.ac.za

### 4.7.2.3 PhD in Plant Biotechnology

#### Programme Code

53287 – 978 (360)

#### Programme Description

A publication-quality dissertation and an oral examination is required from you. See also section 2.4 in this Yearbook part, and section 2.3 in Yearbook Part 5 (Faculty of Science).

## Enquiries

Prof C Rhode

Tel: 021 808 5834

E-mail: clintr@sun.ac.za

## 4.8 Department of Horticultural Science

### 4.8.1 BScHons in Applied Plant Physiology

#### Programme Code

5971001

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable BSc degree with Botany, Biochemistry, Genetics or Plant Biotechnology as major subject in which an average final mark of 60% was obtained.
- Supplementary study may be required.

#### Closing Date for Applications

Apply by 14 September of the previous year.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over one year after an applicable three-year BSc degree.

#### Programme Content

The Honours programme in Applied Plant Physiology is designed to strengthen your knowledge and competencies in the discipline of Horticultural Science, with emphasis on plant physiological, biochemical and molecular mechanisms, which is relevant to production and quality systems within horticultural crops. You will also be equipped in research methodology, whilst your writing and presentation skills will also be developed. These skills will enable you to apply for further postgraduate studies offered in Horticulture (MScAgric).

#### Compulsory Modules

12487: Applied Plant Physiology	714(16): Ecophysiology of horticultural and agronomical crops
12487: Applied Plant Physiology	734(13): Applied plant physiology and tree architecture
12487: Applied Plant Physiology	744(13): Postharvest physiology and technology of horticultural and agronomical crops
12487: Applied Plant Physiology	764(16): Nutrition of horticultural and agronomical crops
12487: Applied Plant Physiology	773(30): Research project

plus

#### Elective Modules

Choose one of the groupings below.

39632: Horticultural Science	714(16): Deciduous fruit production
OR	
13537: Plant genetics and crop improvement	722(8): Plant genetics and crop improvement
11061: Biometry	721(8): Biometrical applications

plus

Choose two of the five modules below. Neither Agronomy 764 and Horticultural Science 742 nor Agronomy 711 and Horticultural Science 762 can be taken together.

55565: Agronomy	764(8): Advanced weed management for annual and perennial crops
55565: Agronomy	711(8): Production physiology and technology for intensive crop production systems
39362: Horticultural Science	742(8): Citrus physiology and technology
39632: Horticultural Science	752(8): Ornamental and foliage plant production
39632: Horticultural Science	762(8): Subtropical fruit production

## Assessment and Examination

Modules are assessed by means of practical and written assignments, tests and written examinations in June and November.

## Enquiries

Dr E Crouch

Tel: 021 808 4763

E-mail: elke@sun.ac.za

## 4.8.2 MScAgric in Horticultural Science

### Programme Code

2731001

### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable BScAgric degree.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.

### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over a minimum of one year but may take longer to complete.

### Programme Content

This programme consists of a research and a modular component. The research topic can be chosen from the following themes:

- growth and development strategies for deciduous fruit, citrus and fynbos plants that limit production and/or quality such as fruit set, fruit size, colour development, tree architecture and light interception;
- flower initiation, dormancy and stress conditions, for example sun scorch in fruit, postharvest physiology including controlled atmospheric storage requirements for deciduous fruit, citrus and cut flowers; or
- physiological abnormalities such as gel decline in plums, surface scorch marks on apples, blackening of protea foliage.

The modular component of the programme is aimed at the acquisition of generic research competencies to support the research part of the programme. You must also deepen your subject knowledge on general plant physiology through self-study.

### Compulsory Modules

11061: Biometry	821(8): Biometrical applications
39632: Horticultural Science	871(172): Master's thesis

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Dr E Crouch  
Tel: 021 808 4763  
E-mail: elke@sun.ac.za

### 4.8.3 PhD in Horticultural Science or PhD (Agric)

#### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

#### Programme Description

You must carry out a relevant and practically oriented research project in Horticultural Science, leading to innovation or problem-solving through high-level research in Horticultural Science and in the industry concerned. The research project will equip you at the highest academic level with the knowledge and expertise you need for entering the research industry or professional field. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

#### Programme Content

##### Compulsory Module

39632: Horticultural Science	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
------------------------------	---------------------------------

#### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Dr E Crouch  
Tel: 021 808 4763  
E-mail: elke@sun.ac.za

## 4.9 Department of Plant Pathology

### 4.9.1 BScHons in Plant Pathology

#### Programme Code

5971001

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- A BSc degree with Microbiology, Genetics, Botany or Biotechnology as major with an average final mark of 60% for the major.
- Supplementary study may be required.

#### Closing Date for Applications

Apply by 14 September of the previous year.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over one year.

#### Programme Content

The programme consists of further specialised study in Plant Pathology. The modules and study tasks add greater depth of learning, building further on a bachelor's programme with Microbiology, Genetics, Botany or Biotechnology as major subject. The programme is research and career oriented and is based on modern technology and the most recently available research in Plant Pathology. It links up with research projects carried out in the Department.

## Compulsory Modules

32891: Plant Pathology	771(16): Advanced disease management
32891: Plant Pathology	772(16): Advanced plant disease dynamics
32891: Plant Pathology	773(10): Research methodology
32891: Plant Pathology	774(60): Project management and presentation
32891: Plant Pathology	775(18): Advanced topics in plant pathology

## Assessment and Examination

Modules are assessed by means of practical and written assignments, tests and written examinations in June and November.

## Enquiries

Dr C Lennox

Tel: 021 808 4796

E-mail: clennox@sun.ac.za

## 4.9.2 MSc or MScAgric in Plant Pathology

### Programme Code

5981001 or 2731011

### Specific Admission Requirements

- The BScAgric degree or a BScHons in a suitable subject field.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.

### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over a minimum of one year but may take longer to complete.

### Programme Content

Research projects can be selected from one of the following themes:

- fungal taxonomy (description and reclassification of known and new fungi by the application of various methods, such as molecular technology);
- applied molecular plant pathology, including the use of molecular-based techniques for the detection, diagnosis and characterisation of plant pathogenic populations of vines, deciduous fruit, citrus and agronomic crops;
- pre- and postharvest pathology in deciduous fruit, vines and citrus (status and behaviour of inocula on fruit surfaces, infection processes and plant resistance reactions);
- stem diseases in vines (etiology, diagnosis, epidemiology and integrated management);
- use of fungicides (spray technology) and fungal resistance (sensitivity in wild populations and disruption after fungicide exposure, management of fungicide resistance in fruit orchards, vineyards and agronomic crops); or
- integrated management (chemical, biological and alternative compounds) of diseases in deciduous fruit, vines, citrus and agronomic crops.

New or existing disease epidemics of economic importance are also researched.

### Compulsory Module

32891: Plant Pathology	818(180): Master's thesis
------------------------	---------------------------

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Dr C Lennox

Tel: 021 808 4796

E-mail: clennox@sun.ac.za

### 4.9.3 PhD in Plant Pathology or PhD (Agric)

#### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

#### Programme Description

You must carry out a relevant and practically oriented research project in Plant Pathology, leading to innovation or problem-solving through high-level research in Plant Pathology and in the industry concerned. The research project will equip you at the highest academic level with the knowledge and expertise you need for entering the research industry or professional field. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

#### Programme Content

##### Compulsory Module

32891: Plant Pathology	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
------------------------	---------------------------------

#### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Dr C Lennox

Tel: 021 808 4796

E-mail: clennox@sun.ac.za

## 4.10 Department of Soil Science

### 4.10.1 MScAgric in Soil Science

#### Programme Code

2731011

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable BScAgric degree.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over a minimum of one year but may take longer to complete.

#### Programme Content

You select a topic for the research project from one of the following specialisation fields:

- soil genesis and classification;
- weathering and clay mineral synthesis;
- plant nutrition and fertilisation;
- irrigation and soil-plant-water management including salinity control and management;
- resource (soil, land and water) evaluation and management systems such as, amongst others, erosion control; or
- rhizosphere and pedosphere organisms and interactions.

The project may consist of either soil science only or soil science integrated with a crop (plant), climate and/or terrain study. You will be guided towards project planning for problem solving by research within general guidelines and an overall picture of sustainable resource use through environmentally friendly, economical soil, water and plant management. You must be able to show that you have the ability to deal analytically and systematically with problems relating to the soil, plant, water and atmosphere continuum, and to identify possible solutions and formulate guidelines for the environmentally friendly management of natural resources.

### Compulsory Module

14176: Soil Science	818(180): Master's thesis
---------------------	---------------------------

### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

### Enquiries

Prof CE Clarke

Tel: 021 808 3659

E-mail: cdowding@sun.ac.za

## 4.10.2 MSc (Agric)

### Programme Code

5981001

### Specific Admission Requirements

- A suitable four-year Bachelor's (Agric) degree (NQF level 8), or a three-year bachelor's degree (NQF level 7) and an applicable postgraduate qualification (BScHons) in any of the major subjects that are accompanied by agriculture.
- An average final mark of 60% for all final-year subjects.

### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over a minimum of one year but may take longer to complete.

### Programme Content

You select a topic for the research project from one of the following specialisation fields:

- soil genesis and classification;
- weathering and clay mineral synthesis;
- plant nutrition and fertilisation;
- irrigation and soil-plant-water management including salinity control and management;
- resource (soil, land and water) evaluation and management systems such as, amongst others, erosion control; or
- rhizosphere and pedosphere organisms and interactions.

The project may consist of either soil science only or soil science integrated with a crop (plant), climate and/or terrain study. You will be guided towards project planning for problem solving by research within general guidelines and an overall picture of sustainable resource use through environmentally friendly, economical soil, water and plant management. You must be able to show that you have the ability to deal analytically and systematically with problems relating to the soil, plant, water and atmosphere continuum, and to identify possible solutions and formulate guidelines for the environmentally friendly management of natural resources.

### Compulsory Module

14015: Agriculture	818(180): Master's thesis
--------------------	---------------------------

### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a



seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

### Enquiries

Prof CE Clarke

Tel: 021 808 3659

E-mail: cdowding@sun.ac.za

## 4.10.3 PhD in Soil Science or PhD (Agric)

### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

### Programme Description

You must carry out a relevant and practically oriented research project in Soil Science, leading to innovation or problem-solving through high-level research in Soil Science and in the industry concerned. The research project will equip you at the highest academic level with the knowledge and expertise you need for entering the research industry or professional field. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

### Programme Content

#### Compulsory Module

14176: Soil Science	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
---------------------	---------------------------------

### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

### Enquiries

Prof CE Clarke

Tel: 021 808 3659

E-mail: cdowding@sun.ac.za

## 4.11 Department of Viticulture and Oenology

### 4.11.1 Programmes in Oenology

#### 4.11.1.1 MScAgric in Oenology

### Programme Code

2731011

### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable BScAgric degree.
- An average final mark of 60% for the final year modules.

### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over two years.

### Programme Content

You determine your topic for the master's degree in consultation with your supervisor. A research topic can be selected from one of the following themes:

- wine microbiology;
- wine chemistry;
- analytical method development, and

- sensory methodology and analyses.

A further objective is the deepening of subject knowledge through self-study.

### Compulsory Module

33103: Oenology	818(180): Master's thesis
-----------------	---------------------------

### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

### Enquiries

Prof MA Vivier  
Tel: 021 808 3773  
E-mail: mav@sun.ac.za

#### 4.11.1.2 PhD in Oenology or PhD (Agric)

### Programme Code

5471001 or 247100

### Programme Description

The programmes focus strongly on research in the specialist field of Oenology. You choose a relevant and practically oriented research project which puts you in contact with the industry, leading to problem-solving in the industry concerned, and also prepares you to enter the research or professional market. The programme contributes at a high level to the Faculty of AgriSciences' research profile and delivers professional individuals who can play, either as a team member or individually, a meaningful role in national or international research, teaching and policymaking in specialist fields concerned with sustainable and environmentally friendly grape and wine industries. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

### Programme Content

### Compulsory Module

33103: Oenology	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
-----------------	---------------------------------

### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

### Enquiries

Prof MA Vivier  
Tel: 021 808 3773  
E-mail: mav@sun.ac.za

#### 4.11.2 Programmes in Viticulture

##### 4.11.2.1 MScAgric in Viticulture

### Programme Code

2731011

### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable BScAgric degree.
- An average final mark of 60% for the final-year modules.

## Duration of Programme

This programme extends over two years.

## Programme Content

You determine your topic for the master's degree in consultation with your supervisor. A research topic can be selected from one of the following themes:

- molecular aspects of key processes in grapevines;
- advanced grapevine physiology;
- climate change;
- analysis of spatial patterns;
- berry ripening; and
- table grapes.

A further objective is the deepening of subject knowledge through self-study.

## Compulsory Module

33081: Viticulture	818(180): Master's thesis
--------------------	---------------------------

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof MA Vivier

Tel: 021 808 3773

E-mail: mav@sun.ac.za

### 4.11.2.2 PhD in Viticulture or PhD (Agric)

## Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

## Programme Description

The programmes focus strongly on research in the specialist field of Viticulture. You choose a relevant and practically oriented research project which puts you in contact with the industry, leading to problem-solving in the industry concerned, and also prepares you to enter the research or professional market. The programme contributes at a high level to the Faculty of AgriSciences' research profile and delivers professional individuals who can play, either as a team member or individually, a meaningful role in national or international research, teaching and policy-making in specialist fields concerned with sustainable and environmentally friendly grape and wine industries. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

## Programme Content

## Compulsory Module

33081: Viticulture	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
--------------------	---------------------------------

## Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof MA Vivier

Tel: 021 808 3773

E-mail: mav@sun.ac.za

## 4.11.3 Programmes in Wine Biotechnology

### 4.11.3.1 BScHons in Wine Biotechnology

#### Programme Code

5971001

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- A suitable degree (e.g. BSc, BScAgric or BEng) with any applicable discipline as major.
- An average final mark of 60% for all final-year major subject modules.

#### Closing Date for Applications

See the website for relevant application information and deadlines.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over one year.

#### Programme Content

The honours programme consists of further study in one of the majors for the degree BScAgric, BSc or BEng; supplementary study is sometimes required. The modules and study assignments add depth to the study and form a continuation of the bachelor's programme. The programme is research and career-oriented and is based on modern technology and the most recently available research in the field of wine production systems.

The programme comprises formal lectures, as well as seminars, self-study and experimental work in Wine Biotechnology. The following topics are covered:

- genetic properties and improvement of wine yeasts;
- grape-based beverages;
- alcoholic fermentation;
- chemical compounds of grapes and wine;
- techniques in wine and grapevine biotechnology;
- malolactic fermentation and microbial spoilage;
- enzymes in preparation of wine;
- grapevine structure and functions; and
- grapevine biology, biotechnology and improvement.

You must carry out self-study on the South African wine industry as well as independent research in grapevine and wine biotechnology.

#### Compulsory Modules

50997: Wine Biotechnology	771(30): Research methodology for grapevine and wine biotechnology
50997: Wine Biotechnology	772(20): Techniques in grape and wine sciences
50997: Wine Biotechnology	773(20): Wine-related microbes
50997: Wine Biotechnology	774(20): Grapevine biology and biotechnology
50997: Wine Biotechnology	775(10): Seminar
50997: Wine Biotechnology	776(20): Chemistry and biochemistry of grapes and wine

#### Assessment and Examination

Modules are assessed by means of practical and written assignments, tests and written examinations throughout the year.

## Enquiries

Prof MA Vivier  
Tel: 021 808 3773  
E-mail: mav@sun.ac.za

### 4.11.3.2 MScAgric or MSc in Wine Biotechnology

#### Programme Code

2731011 or 5981001

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- An applicable BScAgric, BEng or BScHons degree.
- An average final mark of 60% for the major subject.

#### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over two years.

#### Programme Content

You determine your topic for the master's degree in consultation with your supervisor. A research topic can be selected from one of the following themes:

- the selection and genetic improvement of wine yeasts and bacteria for the improvement of wine fermentation and processing, also using alternative techniques such as directed evolution, and for the improvement of the quality and sensory properties of wine and other grape-based beverages;
- interaction of wine yeasts and lactic acid bacteria related to nutrient usage and the impact on wine aroma;
- assessing the impact of viticultural and winemaking practices on the microbiome;
- grape and wine sensory evaluation techniques and consumer studies; and
- the interaction of grapevines with their biotic and abiotic environments by studying molecular and metabolite profiles of the plant.

#### Compulsory Module

50997: Wine Biotechnology	818(180): Master's thesis
---------------------------	---------------------------

#### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

## Enquiries

Prof MA Vivier  
Tel: 021 808 3773  
E-mail: mav@sun.ac.za

### 4.11.3.3 PhD in Wine Biotechnology or PhD (Agric)

#### Programme Code

5471001 or 274100

#### Programme Description

The programmes focus strongly on research in the specialist field of Grape or Wine Biotechnology. You choose a relevant fundamental or practically oriented research project which puts you in contact with the industry, leading to problem-solving in the industry concerned, and also prepares you to enter the research or professional market. The programme contributes at a high level to the Faculty of AgriSciences' research profile and delivers professional individuals who can play, either as a team member or individually, a meaningful role in national or international research, teaching and policy-making in specialist fields

concerned with sustainable and environmentally friendly grape and wine industries. See section 2.4 in this chapter for general information on the PhD degree in the Faculty of AgriSciences.

## Programme Content

### Compulsory Module

50997: Wine Biotechnology	978(360): Doctoral dissertation
---------------------------	---------------------------------

### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a dissertation to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your dissertation during this seminar.

### Enquiries

Prof MA Vivier  
Tel: 021 808 3773  
E-mail: mav@sun.ac.za

## 4.11.4 MSc (Agric)

### Programme Code

5981001

### Specific Admission Requirements

- A suitable four-year Bachelor's (Agric) degree (NQF level 8), or a three-year bachelor's degree (NQF level 7) and an applicable postgraduate qualification (BScHons) in any of the major subjects that are accompanied by agriculture.
- An average final mark of 60% for all final-year subjects.

### Duration of Programme

This programme extends over two years.

### Programme Content

You determine your topic for the master's degree in consultation with your supervisor.

### Compulsory Module

14015: AgriSciences	818(180): Master's thesis
---------------------	---------------------------

### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research you must submit a thesis to the satisfaction of the examiners and present a seminar. You will be expected to defend your thesis during this seminar.

### Enquiries

Prof MA Vivier  
Tel: 021 808 3773  
E-mail: mav@sun.ac.za

## 5. Multidisciplinary postgraduate programmes

### 5.1 Programme in Sustainable Agriculture

#### 5.1.1 MSc (Sustainable Agriculture)

##### Programme Code

5981001

##### Specific Admission Requirements

- A 4-year BScAgric. degree (NQF level 8) is strongly recommended, or a 3-year BSc degree (NQF level 7) with a relevant postgraduate qualification (e.g., BScHons or postgraduate diploma at NQF level 8). Other degrees deemed appropriate by Senate may also be considered (including, but not limited to, fields like engineering, economics, innovation and data science, and geography, that can be linked to sustainable agriculture).
- An undergraduate biometry, data science or related statistics module.
- A final aggregate mark of 60% or higher for the previous degree.
- A written motivation letter stating the reasons for wanting to enrol in the programme and how you view sustainability in agriculture.

##### Programme Content

The purpose of this programme is to train you as a researcher in understanding and working within sustainable agriculture. To this end, we adopt a systems approach to agriculture. The programme comprises modules that actively seek to integrate scientific methods across disciplines to advance sustainability in spheres where agriculture interacts with natural, social and economic factors.

The programme starts with the module Introduction to Systems Thinking. Next, the programme teaches concepts in sectoral sustainable agriculture such as 'sustainable animal production', 'sustainable plant production' and 'livelihood perspectives'. Modules like Systems Analysis and Simulation, QUALUS (Quantitative Land Use Analysis) and Biometry will improve your quantitative and analytical skills, which you need to generate and integrate knowledge of sustainable agriculture. A work-integrated learning opportunity that links you to organisations in the industry will give you a real-life perspective and ensure that you are ready for the job market.

##### Compulsory Modules

13341: Introduction to Systems Thinking	870(6): Introduction to systems thinking
13340: Sustainable Soil Management	871(8): Sustainable soil management
13342: Plant Production and Plant Protection	872(8): Plant production and plant protection
13343: Sustainable Animal Production	873(8): Sustainable animal production
11490: Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services	874(6): Biodiversity and ecosystem services
13344: Sociology of Sustainable Agriculture	875(6): Sociology of sustainable agriculture
13345: Economics of Sustainable Agriculture	876(8): Economics of sustainable agriculture (including farm management)
13346: Systems Analysis and Simulation	880(6): Systems analysis and simulation
13347: Quantitative Analysis of Land Use Systems	881(8): Quantitative analysis of land use systems
13348: Work-integrated Learning	882(20): Work-integrated learning
13349: Research Thesis (Sustainable Agriculture)	883(90): Research thesis
11061: Biometry	821(8): Biometrical applications

##### Assessment and Examination

Modules are assessed by means of practical and written assignments, tests and written examinations in June and November.

After you have completed your research, you must submit a thesis that the examiners approve. Then you must present a seminar where you will have to defend your thesis.

## Enquiries

Dr EE Phiri

Tel: 021 808 4558

E-mail: sust\_agri@sun.ac.za

## 5.2 Centre for Bioinformatics and Computational Biology

### 5.2.1 MSc in Bioinformatics and Computational Biology

#### Programme Code

14166 – 879(180)

This programme is offered as a multidisciplinary programme within the Faculties of AgriSciences, Medicine and Health Sciences, and Science. You enrol in the faculty where your research focus and supervisor(s) are situated and will graduate with the degree from that faculty.

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- One of the following qualifications:
  - A BScHons degree in Bioinformatics and Computational Biology, Biochemistry, Genetics, or Molecular Biology;
  - An applicable BScHons degree in a biological field;
  - A BScHons degree in Computer Science, Informatics, Mathematics, Applied Mathematics or Statistics;
  - An applicable BScHons degree in a Mathematics-related field; or
  - Any other academic degree qualification and appropriate experience (assessed using the regular RPL procedures) approved by the Senate
- Depending on your previous training and experience, the Postgraduate Committee of the Division of Molecular Biology and Human Genetics may prescribe additional studies.

#### Programme Content

Independent research on an approved topic as determined by the supervisor(s) and leading to a thesis is required. This programme consists of a 100% thesis.

#### Compulsory Module

Thesis: Bioinformatics and Computational Biology	818(180)
--	----------

#### Assessment and Examination

After completion of the research, you must submit a thesis for examination to the satisfaction of the appointed examiners and do an oral examination.

## Enquiries

Programme leader: Prof H Patterton

Tel: 021 808 2774

Email: hpatterton@sun.ac.za

### 5.2.2 PhD in Bioinformatics and Computational Biology

#### Programme Code

14166 – 978(360)

#### Programme Description

The programme is offered as a multidisciplinary programme within the Faculties of AgriSciences, Medicine and Health Sciences, and Science. You enrol in the faculty where your research focus and supervisor(s) are situated, and will graduate with the degree from that faculty.

A publication-ready dissertation containing the results of your independent research is required. See also section 2.3 in the chapter on "Postgraduate Programmes" in the Faculty of Science's Yearbook part for general information on this PhD degree.



### 5.2.3 Structured MSc in Bioinformatics of Infectious Diseases and Pathogen Genomics

#### Programme Code

0783\_100\_A101

#### Programme description

This programme is offered as a multidisciplinary programme within the Faculties of AgriSciences, Medicine and Health Sciences, and Science. It is aimed at students with a biological background. It will equip you with a suite of sophisticated bioinformatics techniques, concepts and tools that are used in the infectious diseases and pathogen genomics research fields. You enrol in the faculty where your research focus and supervisor(s) are situated and will graduate with the degree from that faculty.

#### Specific Admission Requirements

- In order to register for the programme, one of the following qualifications is required:
  - A Bachelor of Science Honours degree (NQF level 8) in Bioinformatics, Data Science, Statistics, Mathematics, Computer Science, Biochemistry, Genetics, Molecular Biology, or a related field; or
  - A professional 480-credit bachelor's degree (NQF level 8) in Bioinformatics, Data Science, Statistics, Mathematics, Computer Science, Biochemistry, Genetics, Molecular Biology, or a related field; or
  - Any other academic degree qualification and appropriate experience (assessed using the regular Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) procedures) that have been approved by the Faculty Board of the AgriSciences, Medicine and Health Sciences or Science faculty.
- A minimum of 65% in the preceding qualification is required to be considered for the MSc degree.
- Candidates are selected on academic merit and only a limited number of candidates are admitted to the programme.
- Applications are considered by the Centre for Bioinformatics and Computational Biology

#### Closing Date for Applications

Apply online at <https://student.sun.ac.za> by 31 August of the previous year for international students, and 30 September for South African students. If you are not an SU student, please note that your application may take longer to process due to the verification of qualifications. Therefore, apply early.

#### Programme Structure

Approximately the first 9 months of the degree programme is dedicated to lectures and training and the remaining 15 months to a research project agreed to by an assigned supervisor.

#### Duration of programme

The programme extends over two years on a full-time basis.

#### Programme Content

The programme is composed of a taught (90 credit) and a research (90 credit) component. The following modules are offered:

##### Compulsory Modules (155 credits)

Subject number	Module code	Credits	Module Name	Semester
12555	811	35	Bioinformatics	1
71024	812	10	Algorithms and Machine Learning in Bioinformatics	1
71025	813	10	Python in Bioinformatics	1
71026	814	10	R-Language for Bioinformatics	1
71043	871	90	Bioinformatics Research Project in AgriSciences	1, 2, 3, 4

## Elective Modules (25 credits)

Please note: An elective module will only be offered if a minimum of five students have enrolled for the module.

Choose one of the following modules.

Subject number	Module code	Credits	Module Name	Semester
71030	845	25	Infectious Diseases	2
71031	846	25	Pathogen Genomics	2

## Assessment and Examination

- All the modules (except for the research project) will be assessed by means of flexible assessment, which may include a combination of assignments and summative assessments.
- All summative assessments will be moderated internally and externally. The taught part of the degree programme contributes 50% to the final mark. The contribution of the individual modules is weighted by credit value. You must pass each module with at least 50% to obtain the degree.
- You must complete a 90-credit research project and submit a thesis for examination. The thesis will be examined by one internal and one external examiner according to University guidelines. The average mark of the two examiners contributes 50% to the final mark. You must pass the research project with at least 50% to obtain the degree.
- Note that taught modules may be repeated, but that the research project module cannot be repeated if it is not passed.
- The final mark for the degree is calculated from the average of the taught modules (50%) and the research project (50%).
- After the thesis has been examined, you must present a seminar detailing your research results to the satisfaction of the examination committee.

## Enquiries

Programme leader: Prof H Patterton

Centre for Bioinformatics and Computational Biology

Tel: 021 808 2774

E-mail: hpatterton@sun.ac.za

# Subjects, modules and module contents

## 1. Definitions and explanations of important terms

It is important that you take note of the definitions of a few terms in order to understand and use this chapter fully. The example below shows how these terms will appear in the information that is offered later in this chapter.

**Example:**

### **15504 Agricultural Economics**

**234 (16) South African agriculture (6L)**

#### 1.1 Explanation

##### **15504 Agricultural Economics**

Each subject is identified by a five-digit subject number. The subject number "15504" refers to the subject Agricultural Economics.

##### **15504 Agricultural Economics**

The subject name is presented directly after the five-digit subject number before the various modules of the subject are offered. Normally the subject name is followed by the module code and the credit value of the specific module, for example in this case: Agricultural Economics 234 (16).

##### **234 (16) South African agriculture (6L)**

The module code consists of a three-digit number that is unique to the specific module. The abovementioned module code "234" has the following meaning:

The first digit "2" refers to the year of study in which the module is presented, for example:

- Year 1: 214
- Year 2: 314
- Year 3: 414

The second digit "3" refers to the semester that the module will be presented in and also serves as a number to distinguish between various modules offered within the same specific year of study. The University uses different numbers to indicate the particular semester of a module, either the first or the second semester or modules that are presented in both semesters (which are year modules). The numbers that indicate semesters are as follows:

- **1, 2 or 3** – modules are presented in the first semester.  
*Semester 1: 214, 324, 334*
- **4, 5 or 6** – modules are presented in the second semester.  
*Semester 2: 342, 354, 364*
- **7, 8 or 9** – modules are presented in both semesters, which are year modules.  
*Year module (both semesters): 278, 288, 391*

The third digit "4" of the module code "234" serves as a distinguishing digit between various modules of the same subject in a particular year of study.

##### **Credit value – 234 (16) South African agriculture (6L)**

The number in brackets immediately following the module code indicates the credit value of the particular module.

##### **Module subject – 234 (16) South African agriculture (6L)**

This indicates the subject that will be dealt with in this specific module.

## Teaching load – 234 (16) South African agriculture (6L)

The teaching load of a module is given immediately after the module subject. It gives you both the teaching load and the type of teaching per week that you can expect in this particular module. For the module 234 (16) South African agriculture (6L) you can expect six lectures each week for the duration of the module. The following abbreviations are used for the teaching load:

- **L** – Lecture lasting 50 minutes, for example 1L
- **P** – Practical period lasting 50 minutes, for example 1P, 2P, 3P
- **S** – Seminar lasting 50 minutes, for example 1S
- **T** – Tutorial lasting 50 minutes, for example 1T, 2T

## 2. Prerequisite pass, prerequisite and corequisite modules

After the description of the content of the module, the following prerequisite pass, prerequisite and corequisite modules, where applicable, are given for that module:

### Prerequisite pass module

A prerequisite pass module is a module that you must pass before you can take the module(s) for which it is a prerequisite pass module.

### Prerequisite module

A prerequisite module is a module in which you must obtain a final mark of at least 40, before you can take the module for which it is a prerequisite module. If you registered for a prerequisite module while it was examined by the "examination" assessment system, your class mark for it must be 40 for you to meet the prerequisite.

If you have once complied with a prerequisite rule, your compliance will remain valid for the period given in the applicable assessment rules, even if you repeat the prerequisite module and do not meet the minimum level when repeating the module.

Please note: You must pass all the modules you used as prerequisites in the programme before the relevant degree, certificate or diploma can be awarded to you.

### Corequisite module

A corequisite module is a module that you must register for in an earlier semester than the module for which it is a corequisite, or in the same semester.

Please note: You must pass all the modules you used as corequisites in the programme before the relevant degree, certificate or diploma can be awarded to you.

## 2.1 Condition for the granting of a qualification or degree

The Faculty will only award a qualification if you have passed all the relevant prerequisite and corequisite modules of the specific degree programme.

## 3. Subjects, modules and module contents

Subjects with their accompanying modules, credits, module subjects, teaching loads, language specifications and module contents are presented below in alphabetical order.

### 15504 Agricultural Economics

#### 234 (16) South African agriculture (6L)

An overview of the structure of the agricultural sector with regard to production and resource use; analysing the roles of agriculture, the institutional framework for agriculture, and the international context. History of agricultural policy; marketing and prices.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

#### 242 (8) Agricultural production economics and methods of financial analysis (2L, 1T)

Production relations; optimising in factor-product, factor-factor, and product-product relations; cost relations; income, costs and margins in farming; cost accounting; economic and financial criteria; budgets.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Economics 114*

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **262 (8) The economics of agricultural resources (3L)**

Basic concepts; determinants of the demand, supply and value of natural resources; resources and technology; the influence of location on land use; industry-specific factors.

*Home Department: Agricultural Economics*

## **314 (16) Farm management (4L, 2T)**

Approaches to management; entrepreneurship; strategic and operational decision-making; management functions; management information and systems; capital requirements of a farming operation and credit sources; financing policy. Analysis of problems in respect of estate planning, inheritance and taxation (capital transfer tax and income tax) in agriculture. The communication process, communication channels.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Agricultural Economics 242*

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **334 (16) Agricultural and food marketing (3L, 3P)**

This module is designed to introduce a comprehensive and balanced treatment of food marketing systems. It blends marketing and economic theory with real-world analytical tools in order to assist students in better understanding the food system and making profitable marketing decisions.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **354 (16) Agricultural policy in the South African context (3L)**

Investigation of priority policy issues in South African agriculture; the influence on South Africa of the Agreement on Agriculture and subsequent attempts to order international trade in agricultural products; changes in the structure of food supply chains and the globalisation of food trade; BEE and transformation in South African agriculture; the linkages of agriculture to the rest of the economy.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **364 (16) Farm planning and decision-making (4L, 2T)**

Creative problem-solving; framework for analysing farm decision-making; information processing and human judgement; approaches to decision making under conditions of risk and uncertainty; tools and techniques for farm planning and decision-making; linear programming applications; deficiencies in the linear programming algorithm and the introduction of alternative programming techniques; case studies.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Agricultural Economics 242*

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **414 (16) Techniques for national and international market analysis (4L)**

The determinants of demand and supply as well as elasticities and impact indicators in national and international markets. Introduction to econometric techniques.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *(Both Biometry 212 and Biometry 242) OR Mathematics (Bio) 124 OR Statistics and Data Science 188*

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **434 (16) Farm investment and finance management (3L)**

Farm investment and finance management focus on considerations of balancing investment requirements and credit. Agricultural finance processes and the role and cost of credit in farm management. Broadening critical thinking to value-adding decisions. Apply acquired knowledge to the preparation and evaluation of credit application.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Agricultural Economics 314*

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

#### **444 (16) Environmental policy (3L)**

Different standards of environmental protection; the use of market instruments vs. command and control policy instruments to limit environmental damage; support for environmentally friendly technology; cost benefit analysis; quantification of environmental impacts; international environmental treaties; the theory of environmental auditing.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Economics 114*
- *Economics 144*

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

#### **454 (16) Agricultural policy analysis (3L)**

The theoretical base of economic policy in agriculture; analysis of the 'farm problem' in historical and contemporary context; the management of market failures in agriculture: South and Southern Africa; international trade policy.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

#### **478 (32) Agricultural economics research project (1L)**

An assignment that encompasses problem identification, information gathering, analysis and synthesis and that provides students with the opportunity to integrate agricultural economics knowledge in a systems approach.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

#### **479 (24) Risk and business adjustment management (2L, 1T)**

The application of agricultural economic knowledge in the food business environment with specific focus on risk and business adjustment. Extend your interpretation of gained agricultural economic knowledge into the domains of economics, business, management and finance. Sources of risk, evaluation of risk and the design of risk management options is done on the enterprise, strategic and food system levels.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

#### **750 (20) Institutional Economics**

Introduction of a range of problems, decision-making situations and institutional settings relevant to the study of agricultural and resource economics. Through the lens of theory, students will assess and propose solutions to real-world challenges faced by the agricultural sector.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

#### **770 (20) Food and fibre value chain management**

Agricultural value chains provide an introduction and theoretical underpinning to the practical and multi-disciplinary analysis of value chains, supported by recent case studies. The module introduces students to the growing importance of value chains to appreciate how two powerful forces – producers and consumers – drive agricultural value-adding activities in a competitive environment.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

#### **771 (20) Farm management**

Strategic planning and decision-making focused on environmental scanning; concepts and tools of futures research as tools for strategic management; analysis and planning of the farm system; long-term investment decision-making, planning and control of financial goals.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

#### **772 (20) Topical issues in agricultural policy**

The mechanisms of policy implementation; the policy analysis matrix; in-depth study of agricultural policy issues in South Africa; the management of policy processes.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

#### **773 (20) Wine marketing**

Structure, conduct and performance of the South African wine industry; design and report on a marketing strategy and marketing plan for a specific wine brand.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **774 (20) General equilibrium models for policy analysis**

Introduction to input-output tables, social accounting matrices (SAMs) and techniques related to multiplier and computable general equilibrium models.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **775 (20) Agricultural production and resource management**

Theory and practice of agricultural production and resource management; analysis of various production systems and relationships; incorporation of risk and uncertainty in decision-making and planning; problems, challenges and issues regarding land, water, capital, technology and human resources.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **776 (20) International trade and marketing**

International trade theory and trade policy, international marketing and marketing strategies for the export market in general and for South Africa.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **780 (20) Rural development**

Historical overview of rural-development conceptual frameworks; the contribution of agriculture to rural development; two-sector models; modern growth models; integrated rural development; project analysis, practical experience with rural-development projects.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **781 (30) Research assignment: Agricultural economics**

An assignment that encompasses problem identification, information gathering, analysis and synthesis and that provides students with the opportunity to integrate agricultural economics knowledge in a systems approach.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **782 (16) National and international market analysis**

The determinants of demand and supply as well as elasticities and impact indicators in national and international markets. Empirical estimation in the form of econometric models.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- (Both Biometry 212 and 242) OR Mathematics (Bio) 124 OR Statistics and Data Science 188

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **784 (16) Environmental policy**

Different standards of environmental protection; the use of market instruments vs. command and control policy instruments to limit environmental damage; support for environmentally friendly technology; cost-benefit analysis; quantification of environmental impacts; international environmental treaties; the theory of environmental auditing.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- Economics 114
- Economics 144

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **785 (16) Agricultural policy in the South African context**

The theoretical base of economic policy in agriculture; analysis of the 'farm problem' in historical and contemporary context; the management of market failures in agriculture: South and Southern Africa; international trade policy.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **786 (16) Farm investment and finance management**

Farm investment and finance management focus on considerations of balancing investment requirements and credit. Agricultural finance processes and the role and cost of credit in farm management. Broadening



critical thinking to value-adding decisions. Apply acquired knowledge to the preparation and evaluation of credit application.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Agricultural Economics 314*

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

### **850 (15) Institutional Economics**

Introduction of a range of problems, decision-making situations and institutional settings relevant to the study of agricultural and resource economics. Through the lens of theory, students will assess and propose solutions to real-world challenges faced by the agricultural sector.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

### **880 (15) Analysis of food and fibre value chains**

Agricultural value chains provide an introduction and theoretical underpinning to the practical and multi-disciplinary analysis of value chains, supported by recent case studies. The module introduces students to the growing importance of value chains to appreciate how two powerful forces – producers and consumers – drive agricultural value-adding activities in a competitive environment.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

### **884 (15) Rural development**

Overview of rural-development frameworks; the contribution of agriculture to rural development; rural-analysis development project.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

### **885 (15) Applied SAM based modelling**

Introduction to input-output tables, social accounting matrices (SAMs), multiplier and computable general equilibrium models and their application.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

### **891 (15) Strategic farm management**

Systems philosophy and the systems approach to strategic planning and decision-making on sector level; environmental scanning, planning and management of the strategic management process; analysis and planning of the farm system; long-term investment decision-making, planning and control of financial goals.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

### **892 (15) Agricultural policy analysis**

The theoretical structure of agricultural policy analysis; in-depth study of agricultural policy issues in a global context; the management of policy processes.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

### **893 (15) Strategic marketing of wine**

Environmental scanning strategy determination in wine marketing.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

### **894 (15) Topical issues in agricultural resource use**

Assignments on themes like the development of an inventory of bottom quality and quantity, the inter-dependency of the demand for food, fibre and bio-energy, application of systems thinking in the determination of sustainable resource development strategies; planning assistance that can be used in environmental systems analysis.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

### **895 (15) Agricultural production economics and decision analysis**

Sustainable production systems; modelling, simulation and programming techniques; orientation to problem-solving; decision analysis; problems, challenges and issues regarding agricultural production; case studies.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*



## **896 (15) International trade and marketing strategies**

International economics: international trade theory and policy, and marketing strategies.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **13258 Agriculture-nutrition Linkages**

### **814 (10) Agriculture-nutrition linkages**

This theme focuses on the challenges of reducing food insecurity in South Africa, arguing that these are different today from what they were in the past, as they are across Africa, requiring innovative responses and solutions that fundamentally reconsider the underpinnings of food insecurity and how to respond.

*Home division: Human Nutrition*

## **55565 Agronomy**

### **212 (8) Agronomical crop production (1.5L, 1.5P)**

Economic importance of crops; relationship between soil, climate and production capacity; cultivation practices such as tillage, crop rotation and weed control.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Crop Production 152 OR Biology 154

*Home department: Agronomy*

### **312 (8) Greenhouse production techniques (1.5L, 1.5P)**

**Please note:** You only need to register for Agronomy 312 if you failed this module in 2025. This module will not be offered from 2027 onwards.

Soilless production techniques (hydroponics) for seedlings and crops; effect of different growth mediums; different types of climate control; optimum concentrations of nutrient solutions for different crops.

*Home department: Agronomy*

### **313 (4) Cultivation of annual agronomical crops (1.5L)**

In this module, you will learn about the morphology and development of important annual agronomic crops cultivated across a range of climatic regions. Through the study of crop identification and production, you will gain a well-rounded understanding of the biological and environmental factors that influence crop performance. The module places particular emphasis on the interaction between crops and their growing environments, including the influence of soil properties and climatic conditions on crop establishment, growth and yield. By examining these relationships, you will develop a contextual appreciation of how site-specific factors shape agricultural decision-making. Beyond the biological and environmental dimensions, the module also explores how these crops are utilised in agricultural systems and their economic importance within local and global markets. In doing so, it provides valuable insight into the role that agronomic crops play in food security, rural livelihoods and the broader agricultural economy. The module highlights the relevance of these crops within the context of sustainable agriculture. You will reflect on how crop choices and production strategies can contribute to more resilient and environmentally responsible farming systems, equipping you with a broader perspective on the future of agriculture.

*Home department: Agronomy*

### **324 (16) Management of veld and planted pastures (3L, 3P)**

Development and ecology of South African veld types; morphology and physiology of pasture plants and their reaction to defoliation; pasture management principles of grazing management in veld and planted pastures; determination of veld condition methods to evaluate the condition of veld and planted pastures.

*Home department: Agronomy*

### **311 (4) Cultivation of future crops (1.5L)**

In this module, you will explore a diverse range of emerging and potentially valuable crops with applications in food, fibre, medicine and industry. These crops – many of which are underutilised or regionally significant – offer exciting opportunities for innovation in agriculture and resource-based industries.

You will learn to identify these crops based on their unique morphological characteristics and understand their specific environmental and management requirements. The module places emphasis on the ecological adaptability, production potential and sustainability of these crops in different agroecological zones.

In addition to their biological and agronomic traits, the module highlights the role these crops can play in improving agricultural resilience, supporting livelihoods and expanding value chains in both traditional and

emerging markets. Through a sustainability-focused lens, you will investigate management strategies that support optimal growth and long-term viability.

*Home department: Agronomy*

### **341(4) Weed management (1.5L)**

In this module, you will gain a comprehensive understanding of weed biology and its importance within agricultural production systems. You will explore the characteristics and behaviour of a wide variety of weed species by studying their life cycles, ecological interactions and the adaptive strategies that allow them to persist in cropping environments. As you delve into the complexities of weed management, you will examine the specific challenges posed by different types of weeds and evaluate a range of control strategies, including physical, cultural and biological methods. You will also engage with the science and practical application of chemical weed control, with particular attention given to the responsible use of herbicides and the growing concern of herbicide resistance. Finally, you will be introduced to the principles and implementation of integrated weed management programmes, equipping you to design sustainable and context-specific weed control strategies for real-world agricultural systems.

*Home department: Agronomy*

### **343 (4) Vegetable crops for intensive production systems (1.5L)**

In this module, you will identify the most important vegetable crops cultivated in intensive production systems and examine the roles they play in both local and global food supply chains. You will explore the unique morphology and physiology of these crops, gaining insight into the traits that allow them to perform optimally under high-input or controlled environmental conditions.

The module also introduces you to the advanced and specialised production techniques used in intensive plant production, such as fertigation, climate-controlled environments and integrated pest management. By linking crop characteristics to their production requirements, you will learn how to optimise quality, yield and resource efficiency. The broader economic, environmental and technological contexts of intensive vegetable production will also be considered, helping you to reflect on the sustainability and scalability of these systems in real-world agricultural practice.

*Home department: Agronomy*

### **371 (6) Agronomy practical for field crops (3P)**

This hands-on, practical module builds upon the agronomic principles introduced during your second and third years, offering an opportunity to apply and deepen your theoretical knowledge through structured, real-world experiences. You will engage directly with major agronomic crops, learning to identify and evaluate them alongside common weeds in a range of production environments. The module places particular emphasis on applying crop morphology, physiology and growth principles to practical production contexts, allowing you to observe how environmental and management factors influence crop development and yield. Through guided practical sessions, you will gain experience in essential crop management techniques and develop the practical competencies needed to contribute effectively to sustainable and productive agricultural systems. This module serves as a vital bridge between academic theory and field-based application, equipping you with the technical and observational skills required for a successful career in agronomy or crop production.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Agronomy 313 OR Agronomy 341*

*Home department: Agronomy*

### **372 (6) Agronomy practical for intensive production systems (3P)**

This hands-on, practical module is designed to apply and deepen the agronomic knowledge gained during your second and third years through direct engagement with real-world production systems. Within the context of intensive and high-value cropping environments, you will develop practical skills through structured exercises involving pre-commercial crops and intensive vegetable production systems. The module focuses on crop identification and classification, as well as the application of key agronomic concepts such as crop morphology, physiology and growth dynamics under controlled and high-input conditions. Through observation, experimentation and hands-on participation, you will learn to evaluate and refine core production techniques, critically assess their sustainability and productivity, and gain insight into the decision-making processes that underpin successful crop management. By bridging the gap between classroom theory and field-based application, this module prepares you to navigate the complexities of modern intensive agriculture and equips you with the critical thinking and problem-solving skills essential for a professional career in agronomy.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Agronomy 311 OR Agronomy 343*

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **424 (16) Physiological and ecological principles of natural pasture management (3L, 3P)**

**Please note:** This module will not be offered from 2027 onwards due to programme renewal. Students that fail this module in 2026 will be required to register for Agronomy 324 in 2027.

Development and ecology of South African veld types; morphology and physiology of pasture plants; physiology of defoliation and plant response; physiological principles of veld management; determination of veld condition, veld burning, bush encroachment, veld management on game farms; causes and control of erosion.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Agronomy 313 OR Conservation Ecology 314 OR Crop Production 214

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **464 (8) / 764 (8) Advanced weed management for annual and perennial crops (3L)**

Herbicide resistance poses growing challenges in modern agriculture, increasing the need for innovative, sustainable and integrated weed management strategies. This module provides advanced insights into chemical herbicides, resistance management and integrated weed management. You will examine the interactions among weeds, crops and the environment, with a focus on effective and responsible practices for both annual and perennial systems. Practical, research-informed approaches will equip you to design, implement and evaluate resilient and sustainable weed management programmes.

*Corequisite module:*

- Agronomy 341

*Note: This corequisite does not apply to PGDip students.*

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **463 (8) / 763 (8) Production physiology and technology for annual agronomical crops (3L)**

This module focuses on the application of production physiology and technology to annual agronomical crops, specifically cool-weather crops. Students will be required to critically analyse and apply conservation agricultural practices, including crop rotations, crop residue management and crop diversity, to enhance sustainable crop production. Through detailed investigation, students will master the identification and production requirements (soil, nutrient, climatic) of these crops. Furthermore, this module will explore the integration of livestock in cropping systems, the physiological processes driving yield increases and the utilisation and quality requirements of cool-weather crops. Students will develop advanced problem-solving skills through the analysis of real-world scenarios and the formulation of innovative agricultural strategies.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Agronomy 313

*Note: This prerequisite does not apply to PGDip students.*

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **465 (8) / 765 (8) Precision agriculture in field crops (3L)**

In this module, you will learn about a broad range of topics in precision agriculture. We will discuss, amongst others, core agricultural technologies and their integration into precision farming practices, with a focus on data collection and management, sensor technologies, variable rate technology, crop monitoring and management, site-specific management, precision irrigation, and crop protection. Additionally, you will examine data analytics and decision support, economic considerations, sustainability and environmental impact, while addressing the challenges and future trends shaping this dynamic field.

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **411 (8) / 711 (8) Production physiology and technology for intensive crop production systems (3L)**

In this module, you will explore leading-edge techniques and practices essential for sustainable agricultural production in intensive crop production such as vegetables. You will investigate topics such as sustainability in vegetable farming, crop modelling for predictive analysis, integrated crop management strategies, and the intricate dynamics of crop physiology. Emphasis is placed on optimising yield and quality through innovative approaches and technologies, ensuring efficient resource utilisation and minimal environmental impact.

*Corequisite module:*

- Agronomy 343 OR Horticultural Science 314 OR Horticultural Science 342 OR Horticultural Science 352 OR Horticultural Science 362

*Note: This corequisite does not apply to PGDip students.*

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **472 (10) / 772 (10) Agronomy practical for field crops (3P)**

This module provides an opportunity for advanced, experiential learning through the practical application of agronomic principles in real-world production systems. You will critically engage with the implementation of conservation agriculture techniques, precision farming tools and integrated weed management strategies, developing the ability to evaluate their effectiveness within complex, interdependent agroecosystems. Through field-based exercises, experimental design and problem-solving tasks, you will deepen your understanding of how theory translates into practice, and how context-specific decisions impact sustainability and productivity. The module emphasises critical reflection, professional judgement and the integration of evidence-based practices, preparing you for leadership roles in the agricultural sector and lifelong learning in dynamic production environments.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Agronomy 371

*Note: This prerequisite does not apply to PGDip students.*

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **471 (6) / 771 (6) Agronomy practical for intensive production systems (3P)**

This module provides advanced, hands-on experience in the principles and practices of intensive crop production systems, with a particular focus on high-value vegetable crops. Through structured practical sessions, you will gain insight into how core agronomic concepts are applied in the field, including aspects of crop morphology, physiology, environmental interactions and resource optimisation. By observing and participating in real-world production activities, you will explore the interdependent nature of modern farming systems and critically engage with technologies and techniques that support sustainable and efficient crop management. The module emphasises the integration of theory and practice, equipping you with the skills and insight needed to operate effectively in complex agricultural environments.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Agronomy 372

*Note: This prerequisite does not apply to PGDip students.*

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **773 (6) Professional development and research skills (1L)**

In this module, you will develop the foundational skills needed to successfully engage in academic research in agronomy and related agricultural sciences. You will be guided through the research process – from identifying a research problem and formulating clear research questions to designing basic experiments, accessing and critically reviewing scientific literature and interpreting data. Emphasis is placed on strengthening your academic literacy, scientific writing and oral communication skills to support effective research proposal development and reporting. Beyond technical research competencies, the module also focuses on the development of essential professional and soft skills. You will learn how to manage your time and research projects efficiently, handle stress and conflict in academic and team settings, and work effectively in collaborative environments. You will also be introduced to academic tools such as library databases, reference management software, and basic statistical tools, enabling you to access, evaluate and communicate scientific information with confidence and integrity.

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **13335 Agronomy Science Project**

### **772 (30) Agronomy science project (1L)**

Identification, planning, execution, evaluation and reporting of a selected appropriate research project.

Method of assessment: Final report is assessed

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **13505 Animal Anatomy and Physiology**

### **214 (16) Animal anatomy and physiology (3L, 3P)**

Introduction to animal anatomy and physiology. Discussion of the anatomy of the various organ systems, as well as function and endocrine regulation thereof to ensure homeostasis and optimal production and reproduction. Thermoregulation and homeostasis are also discussed in detail. Comparisons are made

between mammals, birds and fish.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Biology 124*
- *Biology 154*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **244 (8) Animal anatomy and physiology (2L, 2T)**

This module comprehensively explores the key physiological systems vital to animal health and productivity. The focus will be on introducing how the systems are designed and function to contribute to the maintenance of homeostasis under production conditions. Students will be required to investigate the endocrine, sensory, immune and reproductive systems, focusing on their role in maintaining homeostasis, especially in production environments. You will learn about hormone functions across species, the importance of sensory organs, the intricacies of animal immunity, and the complexities of reproduction, including endocrine control of gametogenesis.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Biology 124*
- *Biology 154*

*Corequisite module:*

- *Animal Anatomy and Physiology 214*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **13716 Animal Breeding and Genetics I**

### **424 (16) Animal Breeding and Genetics (3L, 3P)**

This module focuses on applying principles and underlying theories of mendelian genetics, genetics of populations, quantitative and molecular genetics to practical animal breeding situations. It will also include the principles of the major mating systems and how they are utilised in animal production. Throughout the module, the main emphasis is on traits of economic importance in the livestock industry including production, reproduction and product traits.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Genetics 354*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **13717 Animal Breeding and Genetics II**

### **452 (8) Animal breeding and genetics (2L, 1.5P)**

This module covers the species-specific breeding systems, including breeding plans and how they are influenced by additive and non-additive components of genetic variance. It also introduces the student to the animal breeding industry in South Africa. International and national genetic evaluation schemes of all livestock are studied. Issues of animal breeding professional practice like ethics, legislation and laws that govern the industry in South Africa are also covered.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Genetics 354*
- *Animal Breeding and Genetics I 424*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **13715 Animal Health**

### **342 (8) Animal health (1.5L, 1.5P)**

An introduction to the various agents and initiators of disease in animals and how they respond at the organism, tissue, cellular and molecular levels. Preventative measures to manage the incidence of diseases.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Animal Anatomy and Physiology 214*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## 54801 Animal Management Science

### 434 (16) Intensive management systems (3L, 3P)

Management of intensively produced monogastric animals including pigs, poultry and aquaculture species, including aspects regarding production facilities and management practices. Production facilities include housing of pigs and poultry, and aquaculture units. Management practices include management of all production stages of pigs (reproduction, weaner and growers), poultry (layers, breeders, hatcheries and broilers) and aquaculture species (fin fish breeding, hatcheries and grow out).

Practicals: Calculation of housing requirements for a piggery. Determination of egg quality, break-out analysis and layer and breeder hen handling and assessment. Farm visits are done on an *ad hoc* basis as biosecurity allows.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Introduction to Animal Nutrition 244*

*Corequisite modules:*

- *Animal Nutrition Science 344*
- *Animal Health 342*
- *Animal Physiology 324*
- *Animal Physiology 344*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### 464 (16) Animal management science (3L, 3P)

Cattle and sheep management practices; production systems; reproduction and mating systems; mating and lambing/calving seasons; identification of animals; fattening and marketing of animals; animal-waste management; flock/herd health; principles of wool production.

*Practicals:* Assessment and handling of cattle and sheep, as well as management practices. Identification of animal diseases and designing of flock/herd health programmes. Students compile a complete flock/herd management and fodder flow programme and visit relevant production facilities and farms. In addition, students also follow short courses in grading of animals presented by the industry.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Introduction to Animal Nutrition 244*

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Animal Nutrition Science 324*
- *Animal Health 342*
- *Animal Physiology 324*
- *Animal Physiology 344*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## 56898 Animal Nutrition Science

### 324 (12) Introduction to ruminant nutrition (3L, 3P)

Digestive processes and digestibility of feeds and nutrients; metabolism and utilisation of end products of digestion; protein and energy systems of ruminants; ARC and NRC nutrient standards; feed evaluation. Execution of a digestibility and balance trial with sheep (or other animals), including laboratory analyses.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Animal Anatomy and Physiology 214*
- *Biochemistry 214*
- *Biochemistry 244*
- *Introduction to Animal Nutrition 244*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### 344 (12) Introduction to monogastric nutrition (3L, 3P)

Characteristics and composition of feeds and raw materials. Factors determining nutrient requirements and intake of animals. Raw material characteristics, nutrient composition, anti-nutrients and toxins. Processing of raw materials and finished feeds. Introductory diet formulation for poultry pigs, and finfish using computer



software, with consideration of factors associated with inclusion levels and raw material physical characteristics.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Introduction to Animal Nutrition 244*

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Animal Anatomy and Physiology 214*
- *Biochemistry 214*
- *Biochemistry 244*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **414 (12) Advanced ruminant nutrition (3L, 3P)**

Species-specific nutrition of ruminant animals. Advanced computer-aided feed formulation, production modelling and live cycle assessment.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Animal Anatomy and Physiology 214*
- *Introduction to Animal Nutrition 244*

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Animal Nutrition Science 324*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **444 (12) Advanced monogastric nutrition (3L, 3P)**

Species-specific nutrition of monogastric animals, including nutrition of all production phases of pigs, poultry (breeders, layers and broilers), aquaculture (finfish), companion animals and horses. Practicals included advanced computer-aided feed formulation and production modelling.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Animal Anatomy and Physiology 214*
- *Introduction to Animal Nutrition 244*

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Animal Nutrition Science 344*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **11851 Animal Physiology**

### **324 (16) Animal physiology (3L, 3P)**

A closer look at the role of the immune system in ensuring animal production and the use of pharmaceuticals in animal production systems. The importance of optimal animal reproduction is also covered, with an introduction to the use of assisted reproductive technologies to ensure viable and cost-efficient animal production, under extensive and intensive conditions.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Animal Anatomy and Physiology 214*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **344 (16) Animal physiology (3L, 3P)**

A closer look at the interaction between the endocrine, cardiovascular, immune, urinary and digestive systems to ensure the maintenance of homeostasis in domesticated animals (mammals, birds, and fish) and wildlife to ensure optimal production in livestock and wildlife species.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Animal Anatomy and Physiology 214*
- *Animal Physiology 324*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **11878 Animal Production**

### **214 (16) Management technology: Production animals (3L, 3P)**

Introduction to nutrients and their functions, classification and processing of raw materials for livestock feed.

Sheep and goats: Supplementary nutrition of grazing sheep and feedlot finishing. Sheep management. Goat management.

Beef cattle: Nutrition and husbandry of breeding herds produced under grazing and intensive systems; feedlot finishing.

Dairy cattle: Nutrition and husbandry of non-lactating and lactating cows and dairy calves. Housing facilities and herd health.

Poultry: Basic principles in poultry production. Broiler management.

Pigs: Management of pigs in different production stages.

The cost and return calculations of each of the above-mentioned operations are discussed.

Practical: Feeding practices, visits to farming units and experimental trials, visual evaluation of dairy and beef cattle, discussion of prepared assignments.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Animal Production Physiology 112 OR Biology 154*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **44733 Animal Production Physiology**

### **112 (8) Animal production physiology (1.5L, 1.5P)**

An introduction to the anatomy, histology and physiology of the digestive and reproductive systems of domesticated animals; ruminants and monogastric animals. Training includes the dissection of the gastrointestinal tract and a basic introduction to principles of animal nutrition.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **51004 Animal Product Science**

### **334 (16) Meat science (3L, 3P)**

Meat production and meat consumption in perspective; factors that influence carcass composition; slaughter of meat animals, butchering of carcasses; pre-slaughter and post-slaughter effects on meat quality; storage and processing of meat products.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Animal Anatomy and Physiology 214*
- *Biochemistry 244*
- *Introduction to Animal Nutrition 244*
- *Animal Physiology 324*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **20826 Animal Science**

### **144 (20) Animal Science (3L, 3P)**

An introduction to Animal Science and careers in Animal Science. An overview of the livestock industry in South Africa and the world. A general introduction to livestock breeds and animal production systems; large stock, small stock, poultry and pigs. An introduction to animal behaviour and welfare care and handling of sheep, cattle, pigs, poultry, and horses.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **474 (32) Animal Science (1L)**

Students will be trained in the science of conducting research, which includes conducting a literature review, designing and executing a scientific experimental design, analysis and interpretation of data, and compilation into a research report and oral presentation of the scientific findings as a seminar. The purpose of this module is to develop skills that include a critical way of thinking about and interpretation of scientific findings, application of theoretical and biometrical concepts, and the reporting of findings in a scientific report. Exposure to industry where students partake in a compulsory tour to relevant livestock industries. Practical work (one month) as prescribed in the "compulsory practical work" section of this part of the Yearbook. Of this,



two weeks can be spent in a farm environment and the remaining two weeks in a relevant commercial industrial environment. A wool classing and Dohne Merino course, as prescribed under the "compulsory practical work" section of this part of the Yearbook, forms part of this module.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Animal Anatomy and Physiology 214*
- *Introduction to Animal Nutrition 244*

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Animal Nutrition Science 324*
- *Animal Nutrition Science 344*
- *Animal Health 342*
- *Animal Physiology 324*
- *Animal Physiology 344*

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **52078 Applied Chemistry**

### **334 (16) Food and Beverage Chemistry (3L, 3P)**

Methods of analysis in the food and beverage industry (infra-red, UV-vis and atomic spectroscopy, calibration-curve error analysis, nuclear magnetic resonance molecular structure analysis and high-performance liquid chromatography); the chemistry of sugars (including the Maillard reaction); the molecular basis for colour in food; chemical aspects of food preservation.

This module may only be taken by students registered for the BSc (Food Sc) programme.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Chemistry 214*
- *Chemistry 264*

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

## **20710 Applied Mathematics**

### **114 (16) Probability Theory and Statistics (3L, 3T)**

Combinatorial analysis; the basic counting principles; permutations and combinations. Random phenomena; sample spaces and events; the probability axioms; the probability of an event; random selection; probability rules; conditional probability; the rule of Bayes; stochastic independence. Discrete and continuous stochastic variables; expected value and variance of a stochastic variable; important discrete distributions: binomial, Poisson, geometric, hypergeometric, negative binomial; important continuous distributions, uniform, normal

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences, Division Applied Mathematics*

### **144 (16) Modelling in Mechanics (3L, 3T)**

Development of the skilled use of vector, differential and integral calculus in the modelling of dynamics of simple physical systems, including the analysis of force fields, motion and modelling assumptions.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Mathematics 114*

*Corequisite module:*

- *Mathematics 144*

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

## **20753 Applied Mathematics B**

### **124 (15) Statics (4L, 2T)**

Vectors; forces; sum of forces at a point; direction cosines and direction angles; components and component vectors; scalar products; vector products; moment of a force; force systems on rigid bodies; equivalent force systems; couples; line of action of the resultant; equilibrium of a rigid body; friction; centre of mass; centroid; volumes; definite integration; moment of inertia of areas.

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

## 12487 Applied Plant Physiology

### 414 (16) Ecophysiology of horticultural and agronomical crops (3L, 3P)

Advanced principles of stomatal conductance, transpiration, and photosynthesis. Micro-meteorological influences on gas exchange. Effects of excess energy – temperature and light. The use of chlorophyll fluorescence as stress indicator. Upscaling of gas exchange, carbon and water balance of crops. Water relations of cells, tissues and whole plant. Stress physiology and advantageous aspects of stress. Climate change and agriculture. Theory and application of ecophysiological measurement techniques from proximal and remote platforms.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Horticultural Science 314 OR Agronomy 322 OR Grapevine Sciences 314

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### 464 (16) Nutrition of horticultural and agronomical crops (3L, 3P)

Factors affecting nutrient availability and uptake from the rhizosphere. Root anatomy, mineral application, uptake and partitioning. The role of root symbioses in nutrient acquisition. Phloem transport and carbohydrate partitioning. Management of vegetative and reproductive balances. Seasonal crop-based nutritional requirements and application strategies.

*Practicals:* A nutrient deficiency project, as well as a series of lectures by industry specialists on topics relating to sustainability in fertiliser management.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Soil Science 244
- Horticultural Science 314 OR Agronomy 342

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### 714 (16) Ecophysiology of horticultural and agronomical crops

Advanced principles of stomatal conductance, transpiration, and photosynthesis. Micro-meteorological influences on gas exchange. Effects of excess energy – temperature and light. The use of chlorophyll fluorescence as stress indicator. Upscaling of gas exchange, carbon and water balance of crops. Water relations of cells, tissues, and whole plants. Stress physiology and advantageous aspects of stress. Climate change and agriculture. Theory and application of ecophysiological measurement techniques from proximal and remote platforms.

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### 734 (13) Applied plant physiology and tree architecture

**Lectures:** Underlying physiology of growth, development and production practices of horticultural crops. Correlative phenomena and the role of plant hormones supported by an overview of relevant cell, tissue and organ anatomy as well as basic genetic principles. Overview of environmental perception and acclimation/adaptation. Dormancy as morphogenetic and survival mechanism. Physiology of growth cessation, hardening, induction and progression of dormancy, rest breaking and branching. Tree architecture and training systems, principles and techniques of tree manipulation and the role of rootstocks. Integration of the above taking production practices into account.

*Practicals:* Inter alia lectures by industry specialists on relevant pre-harvest topics as well as visits to fruit production areas to illustrate and support the module content.

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### 744 (13) Postharvest physiology and technology of horticultural and agronomical crops

Postharvest physiology of fresh-plant products: structure and composition of the product, role of respiration and ethylene metabolism, fresh-plant product ripening and senescence, physiological defects or disorders, food safety.

Postharvest technology: water relations and psychrometrics, quality and maturity parameters, harvest and packing, cooling and storage technology such as controlled atmosphere, transport of fresh-plant products.

Plant products that are discussed to illustrate principles include deciduous fruit (pome fruit, stone fruit and table grapes), as well as some tropical and subtropical crops and vegetables.

*Practicals:* A physiological-disorder defect identification project, a series of lectures by industry specialists on topics such as postharvest problems, logistics and handling of fresh product and ripening, ethylene inhibitors commercially, profitability of certain deciduous fruit types, market trends, and alternative crops like fynbos, visits to the Cape Town market in Epping, a pack house and cold stores, as well as a fresh-cut facility.

*Corequisite module:*

- Biochemistry 244

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### **764 (16) Nutrition of horticultural and agronomical crops**

Factors affecting nutrient availability and uptake from the rhizosphere. Root anatomy, mineral application, uptake and partitioning. The role of root symbioses in nutrient acquisition. Phloem transport and carbohydrate partitioning. Management of vegetative and reproductive balances. Seasonal crop-based nutritional requirements and application strategies.

*Practicals:* A nutrient deficiency project, as well as a series of lectures by industry specialists on topics relating to sustainability in fertilizer management.

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### **773 (30) Research project**

Research project and presentation. Literature review on selected research topics, drawing up a research plan, performing experiments, collection, processing and interpretation of data, writing a research report. Regular feedback on the above via oral presentations.

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

## **46213 Aquaculture**

### **711 (16) Aquaculture production and management systems I**

Management practice of aquaculture production in relation to production systems; production planning; production management: applied biology, nutrition, water quality; including intensive and extensive systems, with reference to marine and freshwater species.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **712 (16) Aquaculture products**

Processing technology and management practices in aquaculture. Product quality, food and health standards. Product development.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **713 (16) Introduction to Aquaponics Production Systems**

Aquaponics food production technology is complex and requires a broad spectrum of knowledge to understand and manage the processes involved. A good understanding of the following study fields is necessary: aquaculture, horticulture, chemistry, biology, food safety, and engineering. The content of this module will cover an overview of aquaponics, plant production in aquaponics, fish production in aquaponics, nutrition and feeding of aquatic organisms, water quality management, aquaponics system design, commissioning an aquaponics system, aquaponics system management, and aquaponics product marketing & economics.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **741 (16) Aquaculture production and management systems II**

Management practice of aquaculture production in relation to production systems; production planning; production management; fish health, quality, processing; including intensive and extensive systems, with reference to marine and freshwater species.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **742 (16) Aquaculture ecology**

Aquaculture ecology.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **743 (16) Aquaculture nutrition**

Feeding behaviour of aquaculture species. Nutrition management practices of aquaculture species. Nutrition and food quality of aquaculture species.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **745 (16) Advanced Aquaponics Technologies**

Aquaponics food production technology is complex and requires a broad spectrum of knowledge in order to understand and manage the processes involved. A good understanding of the following study fields is necessary: aquaculture, horticulture, chemistry, biology, food safety, and engineering. The content of this module

will cover fish health management, plant diseases and pest management, food safety, urban & vertical

aquaponics, scientific research methods, entrepreneur skills, business development, product development & marketing, social development potential of aquaponics, regulations & legislation, aquaponics for space.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **772 (30) Aquaculture research practice**

Preparation and planning of research projects in relation to species, facilities, equipment and apparatus; technique and handling methods; collection, processing and interpretation of data; presentation and information transfer.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **12910 Aquaculture Management Science**

### **724 (16) Aquaculture review, assessment and project development I**

Aquaculture species; species selection and biology; aquaculture management practices and production systems; site selection.

*Practical:* The development of a complete production and management plan; species review, species selection, applied biology and production systems; site selection, risk assessment, budget, marketing plan; excursions to aquaculture operations in the Western Cape.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

### **754 (16) Aquaculture review, assessment and project development II**

Aquaculture risk assessment; aquaculture best management practices; production planning; financial planning.

*Practical:* The development of a complete production and management plan; risk assessment; EIA procedures; preparation of a project proposal for presentation; excursions to aquaculture operations in the Western Cape.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **13265 Assessing Food Security**

### **821 (10) Assessing food security**

The module covers food and nutrition assessment methods, different levels as well as indicators, analysis, monitoring and evaluation.

*Home division: Human Nutrition*

## **11053 Biochemistry**

Please note: Students intending to take Biochemistry as a subject are required to take modules such as Biology, Physics and Mathematics during their first year. Chemistry 124 plus Chemistry 144 are taken as the first-year equivalent of Biochemistry.

### **214 (16) Biomolecules: Structure-function relationships (3L, 3P)**

Introduction to the living cell, bio-elements, and the importance of water as the solvent for biochemical reactions and its role in living systems. Introduction to biomolecules (nucleic acids, proteins, carbohydrates, and lipids): their structures, functions and characteristics. An introduction to protein ligand binding, enzyme catalysis and enzyme kinetics.

The practical component covers basic laboratory skills, e.g. how to weigh, how to prepare a solution, dilutions, the use of a micro pipette, the use of a pH meter and a spectrophotometer. Students will investigate the principles of buffering and how to determine an unknown concentration using a standard curve.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Chemistry 124 OR Chemistry 164
- Chemistry 144
- Biology 124

*Home department: Biochemistry*

### **244 (16) Intermediary metabolism (3L, 3P)**

Bioenergetics of metabolism, the metabolism of biomolecules (carbohydrates, lipids and some nitrogen containing compounds). Glycolysis, citric acid cycle and glyoxylate cycle. Oxidative phosphorylation. Photosynthesis. Regulation and integration of metabolism: exploring the implications of metabolic abnormalities in different biological systems.

The practical component includes enzymatic assays, enzyme kinetics, the role of effectors on enzyme activity and the basic principles of chromatography.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Biochemistry 214*

*Home department: Biochemistry*

### **315 (16) Biophysical and structural protein biochemistry (3L, 3T)**

Biophysical analysis: quantitative, qualitative and structural analysis of biological molecules, with focus on amino acids, peptides and proteins, utilising techniques such as spectrophotometry, fluorescence, mass spectrometry, gel electrophoresis and chromatography.

Advanced protein biochemistry: Protein purification techniques and analysis of protein purity, composition and structure. Protein structure/function relationships are studied in the context of a number of specialised complex protein systems and enzymatic reaction mechanisms.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Biochemistry 214*
- *Biochemistry 244*
- *Mathematics (Bio) 124 OR Mathematics 114*

*Home department: Biochemistry*

### **345 (16) Specialised biochemical topics (3L, 3T)**

Selected topics chosen from the following (two of the following three topics are selected for presentation every year):

Antibiotics: The biochemistry of selected antibiotics and antimicrobial agents.

Intracellular signal transduction pathways integrated with eucaryotic gene expression: ligand-activated receptor signalling; receptor binding theory; cell surface receptors; nuclear receptors; protein-protein interactions; signalling networks and cross talk; regulation of gene expression; chromatin remodelling; promoters and enhancers; transcription factors.

Immunology: Innate and specific acquired immunity; antibody structure and function; defence mechanisms against pathogenic organisms; vaccinations; allergies; immune disorders; differential gene expression in lymphocyte development and immune diagnostic techniques.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Biochemistry 315*

*Home department: Biochemistry*

### **365 (16) Practical protein expression, purification and analysis techniques (3L, 3P)**

Molecular biology, recombinant protein expression and protein purification techniques. Analysis of DNA and protein purity and integrity. Techniques include plasmid DNA isolation, PCR, restriction enzyme digests, agarose gel electrophoresis, preparation of competent cells, transformation, induction of protein expression, immobilised-metal affinity chromatography, desalting, protein concentration determinations, SDS-PAGE, western blot, activity assays and spectrophotometric analyses.

Practicals will be presented during the recess periods, specifically during a) the week before the 2nd semester officially starts, and b) the recess between the 3rd and 4th terms. By registering for this module, students confirm that they are available during both these periods.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Biochemistry 315*

*Home department: Biochemistry*

## **53953 Biodiversity and Ecology**

### **212 (16) Statistics and other tools for biologists (3L, 3P)**

This module is a thorough introduction to the key numerical skills and processes underpinning the good practice of biological sciences. It covers experimental design, statistical analyses, the concept of null and alternative hypotheses, data handling and logical interpretation, data presentation and scientific communication, advanced use of Microsoft Excel, PowerPoint and R statistical computing free software. Hands-on statistical exercises cover a range of descriptive statistics, parametric and non-parametric analyses,

basic data manipulation, plots, linear regression and analysis of variance. Applied scientific investigatory principles to biology are explored using experimental planning (controls, replication, randomisation), ethics, scientific and popular publication processes, and the use of scientific literature.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Science in Context 178 OR Computer Skills 136*

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

## **214 (16) Principles of ecology (3L, 3P)**

The basics of aquatic biology and population ecology are taught by integrating theory and practical field work. Topics will focus on population growth and life history strategies used by organisms to maximise fitness. This module will be closely integrated with Biodiversity and Ecology 212 in which students will be taught how to analyse ecological data. There will be a three-day, compulsory field course in which students conduct their own research projects.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Biology 124 OR Biology 144*

*Together with one of the two Biology modules above as a prerequisite pass module, a final mark of at least 40% in the other Biology module*

*Corequisite module:*

- *Biodiversity and Ecology 212 OR an equivalent statistical module*

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

## **224 (16) Diversity and function of invertebrates (3L, 3P)**

The focus of this module is invertebrate diversity. Major adaptations in morphology (form) and recent molecular changes in taxonomy, as well as physiological adaptations within the major phyla will be explored. Topics will include recent developments in phylogenetic classifications within the major groups; physiological challenges, such as those related to respiration, osmoregulation, feeding, locomotion, defence, sensory perception and reproduction, which invertebrates face in their respective environments (marine, freshwater and terrestrial); and what strategies are used to cope with or compensate for these challenges. The practical component of the module will entail laboratory work.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Biology 144 OR Biology 154*

*Together with one of the two Biology modules above as a prerequisite pass module, a final mark of at least 40% in the other Biology module*

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

## **254 (16) Vertebrate life (3L, 3P)**

The module deals with various aspects of vertebrates – where they originated, present diversity, how they evolved, what they do and how they work. Topics covered include characteristic features of vertebrates and their body plans; the broad pattern of the evolutionary relationships of vertebrates; ontogeny of vertebrates and the evolutionary implications of developmental mechanisms; basic anatomy, physiology and evolution of vertebrate organ systems; reproductive biology and strategies: sex determination; hormonal control; seasonal cycles; evolution of viviparity; thermo-energetics; water balance, osmoregulation and excretion; surviving in extreme environments. This module includes seminars and practical sessions with data collected in the laboratory or in the field excursion.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Biology 144 OR Biology 154*

*Together with one of the two Biology modules above as a prerequisite pass module, a final mark of at least 40% in the other Biology module*

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

## **264 (16) Diversity of plant form and function (3L, 3P)**

Plants occupy the most diverse habitats on earth. A wide range of morphological and physiological adaptations are required to conquer these habitats. The diversity of plant form and function will be explored as interlinked themes to understand how plants grow, respond to natural cycles, capture resources and



survive in adverse conditions. The theory and practicals will explore each theme in a complementary way that will include formal lectures, group discussions, laboratory and field experiments.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Biology 144 OR Biology 154*

*Together with one of the two Biology modules above as a prerequisite pass module, a final mark of at least 40% in the other Biology module*

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

### **315 (16) Ecology field course (3L, 3P)**

This is a field-based module. The location of the module will change from year to year. The module will be timed to fall outside of the formal lecture periods – typically during the last two weeks of January. The aim of the module is to bring ecological and evolutionary theory to life in the field. The main foci are biotic interactions (e.g. pollination, competition, facilitation), animal behaviour and ecosystem-level ecology. Lectures, assignments and discussion groups will be conducted in the field, as well as during the normal university term.

This module is a restricted module and largely limited to students registered in the Biodiversity and Ecology programme. Participants may be selected from other programmes based on past performance and available places.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Biodiversity and Ecology 212 OR Biodiversity and Ecology 214*

*Together with one of the two Biodiversity and Ecology modules above as a prerequisite pass module, a final mark of at least 40% in the other Biodiversity and Ecology module*

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

### **324 (16) Angiosperm diversity and evolution (3L, 3P)**

The theory investigates the origin and phylogenetic relationships among angiosperms, as determined through different classification systems. Angiosperm diversification and classification is studied through the use of morphological, anatomical, embryological, palynological and molecular characters. The role of hybridisation and polyploidy in the diversification of the angiosperm lineage is assessed. Specialised morphological and physiological adaptations to suboptimal environments and the effect of such adaptations on the diversification of angiosperms are discussed.

The practical series focuses on Fynbos taxa and plant identification up to the family level.

*Prerequisite pass modules (any two of the following three modules):*

- *Biology 124*
- *Biology 144*
- *Biology 154*

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

### **311 (16) Climate and Global Change Challenges (3L, 3P)**

The study of global change with a biological perspective brings together historical and current evidence for such changes and summarises its main drivers. Topics include global climate change, anthropogenic drivers such as pollution, invasion biology, land use and ecosystem change. Data at different spatial and temporal scales and at different levels of biological organisation are covered (from species to communities and ecosystems, and from micro- to macroscales), highlighting the technologies and numerical techniques used to study these processes. Examples will have a strong African focus, including case studies from the Western Cape province from both faunal and floral perspectives. Important areas of teaching include the relevance of understanding global climate change for African, in particular South African, ecosystems. There is a strong emphasis on appropriate communication regarding all the above topics, both among scientists and between scientists and other stakeholders, including the general public.

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

### **342 (16) Integrative Marine Science (3L, 3P)**

This module is presented as five sections that progress from understanding the physical, chemical, geological and biological nature of marine systems to the utilisation, management and protection of marine products systems. Exploration of the physical marine environment focusses specifically on ocean climate and circulation, tides and waves, and coastal and estuarine processes. This is followed by the chemical section, which examines the properties of seawater, focussing on salinity and dissolved gases. The geological section considers plate tectonics, marine provinces and marine sediments. The biological section explores biological life in oceans and adaptations of marine organisms to the different marine environments; productivity and how this feeds into energy and food webs; and benthic, pelagic, island, estuarine and mangrove systems. The final section explores the historical and contemporary reliance of humans on the ocean; consequences of

harvesting marine products; the development of marine protected areas and how this often leads to conflict with people who rely on the ocean for their livelihoods or recreation. Throughout the module we will explore skills related to understanding and measuring different processes.

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

## **11490 Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services**

### **874 (6) Biodiversity and ecosystem services**

Students will be able to explore the diversity of plant species, vegetation types and habitats that exist in South Africa in general, and in the Fynbos biome in particular, by using a tool called SynBioSys Fynbos. This tool is a multi-media platform that includes a geographic information system (GIS), allowing the student to query various biodiversity databases to see how various land uses, e.g. farming, conservation and eco-tourism, impact on the extant biodiversity and ecosystem services. Ultimately, the student will be able to derive biodiversity and ecosystem services data as inputs for qualitative and quantitative land use analysis.

#### **Learning outcomes**

At the end of the module the student is expected to be able to:

- appreciate the existence value of biodiversity as well as the importance of the different types of ecosystem services
- appreciate the complexity of impacts of agricultural practices, and benefits of sustainable farming within a given landscape and biome
- analyse the biological values of land use systems at different levels (species, ecosystems and landscapes) by querying the information system SynBioSys Fynbos
- use geographic information systems (GIS) to analyse biodiversity at both temporal and spatial scales
- discuss the potential of databases to assess the impact of climate change, invasive species and land degradation on biodiversity
- use the SynBioSys system to provide biodiversity data and proxies for ecosystem services, which can be used for quantitative and qualitative land use analysis (QUALUS) and thus farm planning and decision-making.

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

## **25046 Biology**

### **124 (16) Cell biology (3L, 3P)**

Origin and early history of life. Cytology. Cell chemistry, biological membranes and cellular respiration. Fixation, transfer and expression of genetic information. Evolution.

*Responsible departments: Biochemistry, Botany and Zoology, and Genetics*

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

### **144 (16) Biodiversity and ecology (3L, 3P)**

Classification of organisms. Diversity of micro-organisms, plants and animals. Ecological principles and global changes.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Biology 124*

*Responsible departments: Botany and Zoology and Microbiology*

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

### **146 (16) Principles of Biology (3L, 3P)**

For students in the BSc (extended curriculum programmes).

Introduction of biological concepts: 'What is life?', biological evolution, biodiversity and the Tree of Life. The chemical basis of life. Biological molecules. Enzymes. Biological membranes: Structure and function. Cell structure and function: Pro- and eukaryotes, as well as animal and plant cells. Mendelian genetics and inheritance. Introduction to animal phylogeny. Vertebrate life.

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*



## **154 (16) Functional Biology (3L, 3P)**

Plant anatomy and morphology; photosynthesis; water relations; transport in plants; plant mineral nutrition; growth and development; responses to the environment. Functional biology of animals. Introduction to biotechnology.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Biology 124*

*Responsible departments: Botany and Zoology and Genetics*

*Home department: Botany and Zoology*

## **11061 Biometry**

### **212 (8) Introductory Biometry (2L, 1T or 1P)**

Role of statistics in research; methods of tabulation and graphical representation of data; descriptive measures of locality, variation and association; the elementary principles of estimation, randomization sampling methods, unbiasedness and sampling distributions; simple- and multiple linear regression; introduction to hypothesis testing; contingency tables and chi-square tests; tests for normality. All data will be analysed using applicable software.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Mathematics (Bio) 124 OR Mathematics 114*

*Home department: Genetics*

### **242 (8) Applications in Biometry (2L, 1T or 1P)**

Treatment and experimental design; efficiency of estimation; analysis of variance: F-test for homogeneity of variance, one- and two-sample hypothesis tests for means, multiple comparisons procedures; confidence intervals; non-parametric tests. All data will be analysed using applicable software.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Biometry 212*

*Home department: Genetics*

### **721 (8) and 821 (8) Biometrical applications and data analysis in R**

Data processing and graphical procedures with R. Simple descriptive statistics; t-tests for single populations, independent samples t-tests and paired t-tests for two populations; analysis of variance: completely random design, random-blocks design, Latin-square design, cross-classification designs; repeated-measures analysis of variance; multiple comparison procedures. Power analysis. Non-parametric tests: Mann-Whitney, Wilcoxon, Kruskal-Wallis and Friedman; linear regression and correlation; polynomial regression, multiple regression; selection of independent variables with stepwise regression and all-subset regression; covariance analysis; categorical data analyses (Chi-squared tests); logistic regression. This module is presented in two blocks of five half days each in the first semester.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *(Both Biometry 212 and Biometry 242) OR Biometry 211*

*Students with different undergraduate Statistics modules must obtain at least 50% for an admission examination*

*Home department: Genetics*

## **54410 Biotechnology**

### **215 (16) Introductory Microbial Biotechnology (3L, 3P)**

Biotechnology is an applied science, aimed at utilising biological systems and organisms. Biotechnologists therefore use their knowledge of biological systems to generate products or deliver services. This module introduces the student to microbial biotechnology by focussing on the most important aspects of first- and second-generation microbial biotechnology. Themes that will be discussed include bioprospecting, fermentation and bioreactors, microbial metabolic pathways for respiration and fermentation, production of baker's yeast and single-cell protein, the beer- and wine-making processes, production of bioethanol and the production of pharmaceutically important compounds and enzymes.

*Responsible departments: Biochemistry, Genetics, Microbiology, Plant Pathology, and the South African Grape and Wine Sciences Research Institute (SAGWRI) at Stellenbosch University*

### **245 (16) Introductory Plant and Animal Biotechnology (3L, 3P)**

This module follows on from Biotechnology 215 and introduces the student to first- and second-generation biotechnology in eukaryotic systems, including plants, animals and humans. First-generation biotechnology

entails the use of organisms/biological systems as they are, e.g. extracting pharmaceutical products from plants. In contrast, second-generation biotechnology focuses on more specialised techniques, e.g. in vitro propagation, mutagenesis and breeding. Themes that will be discussed include aquaculture, aquatic bioremediation, aquatic bioprocessing, embryogeny, assisted reproduction and embryo manipulation, cell and tissue culture for both plant and animal systems, micropropagation, and the identification, characterisation and production of valuable natural products and pharmaceuticals in plants.

*Presented by departments of Genetics and Plant Pathology, and the South African Grape and Wine Sciences Research Institute (SAGWRI) at Stellenbosch University*

### **315 (16) Advanced Biotechnology (3L, 3P)**

This module focuses to topical and contemporary aspects of microbial, plant and animal biotechnology. It covers advanced recombinant DNA methodologies and how they can be purposed to genetic interventions which ultimately improve human well-being. Some of the themes covered during the module are (i) metagenomic libraries and their uses, (ii) the creation of plant-based GMOs and their applications, and (iii) the creation of animal-based GMOs and their applications.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Biotechnology 245*

*Home department: Genetics*

### **345 (16) Economic and Legal Aspects of Biotechnology (3L, 3P)**

This module is aimed at introducing the biotechnology student to the non-biological (non-natural science) aspects of biotechnology. Students will be introduced to concepts such as the generation and development of creative ideas, entrepreneurship, market research, feasibility studies, the generation of a business plan, financing, profitability, the South African legal system, intellectual property law, patents, plant breeders' rights, trademarks and copyright, licensing agreements, regulatory measures and prerequisites in terms of research practice and GMOs, good laboratory practice, quality control and project management in a research environment.

*Home department: Genetics*

## **48550 Business Management**

### **113 (12) Business management (3L, 1P)**

Procedures for the establishment of a new business, the business environment, business ethics, competition, idea generation and entrepreneurship, choice of form of business, determining break-even levels, resources and people involved in the business, management and managerial resources.

*Home department: Business Management*

### **142 (6) The investment decision (1.5L, 1P)**

The investment cycle; the role and functioning of the JSE Securities Exchange SA; investment risks; factors that influence share prices; fundamental and technical analysis of companies.

*Home department: Business Management*

## **11479 Chemistry**

### **124 (16) Fundamental principles of chemistry I (3L, 3P)**

Matter and its properties; chemical formulae; stoichiometry; solution stoichiometry and reactions in aqueous solution; thermodynamics: energy, enthalpy, entropy and Gibbs free energy; atomic structure and bonding; molecular geometry and structure according to Lewis and VSEPR; intermolecular forces; chemical kinetics.

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

### **144 (16) Fundamental principles of chemistry II (3L, 3P)**

Chemical equilibrium (both quantitative and qualitative), with applications in acid-base and precipitation reactions of aqueous solutions; an introductory study of organic compounds with a variety of functional groups; reaction mechanisms; stereochemistry; polymerisation.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Chemistry 124*

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

### **164 (16) Fundamental principles of chemistry (3L, 3P)**

Matter and its properties; chemical formulae; stoichiometry; solution stoichiometry and reactions in aqueous solution; thermodynamics: energy, enthalpy, entropy and Gibbs free energy; atomic structure and bonding; molecular geometry and structure according to Lewis and VSEPR; intermolecular forces; chemical kinetics.

If you failed Chemistry 124 in a particular year, you may register for this module in the same academic year only if you achieved a final mark of at least 40% and a practical mark of at least 60%.

Mode of delivery: This hybrid-learning module is offered through online themes using SUNLearn as platform, as well as four face-to-face tutorial sessions.

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

### **176 (32) Introduction to chemistry (3L, 3P)**

For students in the BSc (extended curriculum programmes). This module deals with the following themes: Classification of matter; atoms, molecules and ions; stoichiometry; reactions in aqueous solutions; atomic structure; chemical bonding and molecular structure; the periodic table; weak acids and weak bases; electrochemistry; introduction to basic organic chemistry and an introduction to thermodynamics. Examples that illustrate the importance and relevance of science as an everyday phenomenon will be highlighted.

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

### **214 (16) Organic chemistry (3L,3P)**

Reaction mechanisms, including nucleophilic addition and substitution, elimination, electrophilic addition, electrophilic aromatic substitution, organometallic reactions, stereochemistry.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Chemistry 124 OR Chemistry 164
- Chemistry 144

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

### **234 (16) Inorganic chemistry (3L, 3P)**

Periodic trends; structure and bonding in molecules; structure and bonding in solids; acid-base chemistry; main group elements.

Coordination chemistry: Introduction, types of ligands, nomenclature; isomerism in coordination compounds; different geometries; formation constants; crystal field theory.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Chemistry 124 OR Chemistry 164

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

### **254 (16) Physical chemistry (3L, 3P)**

Chemical thermodynamics; colligative properties; phase diagrams; reaction kinetics; probability and introduction to statistical thermodynamics.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Chemistry 124 OR Chemistry 164

*Prerequisite module:*

- Mathematics 114

*Corequisite module:*

- Mathematics 144

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

### **264 (16) Chemical analysis I (3L, 3P)**

Introduction to chemical analysis; basic classical analytical chemistry; errors and uncertainty in analytical data; basic statistical methods; volumetric methods (acid-base, redox and complexometric analysis); solvent

extraction; introduction to chromatographic separation; introduction to analytical molecular spectroscopy; fundamental principles and quantitative aspects of UV/visible spectrophotometry; introduction to infrared spectroscopy.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Chemistry 124 OR Chemistry 164
- Chemistry 144

*Prerequisite module:*

- Mathematics 114 OR Mathematics 144 OR Mathematics (Bio) 124 OR Engineering Mathematics 115 OR Engineering Mathematics 145

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

### **314 (16) Chemical analysis II (3L, 3P)**

Introduction to instrumental analysis. Error theory in quantitative chemical analysis, calibration in instrumental analysis and figures of merit. Introduction to atomic spectroscopy: atomic absorption and atomic emission spectroscopy for quantitative elemental analysis. Molecular spectroscopy: basic principles and application of  $^1\text{H}$  and  $^{13}\text{C}$  nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy (NMR); for molecular structure determination; introduction to analytical mass spectrometry; instrumental chromatographic methods.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Chemistry 264

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

### **324 (16) Physical chemistry (3L, 3P)**

Quantum mechanical description of atoms and molecules; vibrational and rotational spectra; advanced statistical thermodynamics; introduction to symmetry.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Mathematics 114
- Mathematics 144

*Prerequisite module:*

- Chemistry 254

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

### **344 (16) Organic chemistry (3L, 3P)**

Reaction mechanisms, including those pertaining to enolate chemistry, chemo-, stereo- and diastereo-selectivity, controlling geometry of double bonds, pericyclic reactions; stereochemistry; syntheses.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Chemistry 214

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

### **364 (16) Inorganic chemistry (3L, 3P)**

Stereochemical non-rigidity; structure and strength correlations for acids and bases; structure, bonding and reactivity of transition metal complexes; selective metal-complexation; kinetics and mechanisms of selected inorganic reactions; bio-inorganic chemistry and the role of metal complexes in biological systems; introduction to organometallic chemistry and catalysis; the synthesis and characterisation of inorganic compounds (practicals).

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Chemistry 234

*Prerequisite module:*

- Chemistry 264

*Home department: Chemistry and Polymer Science*

## 30317 Computer Programming

### 143 (12) Computer programming (3L, 2P)

Introduction to computer systems. Introduction to a programming environment; expressions; conditional statements; iterative structures; data types; static and dynamic data structures; file handling; abstract data types; objects; structured program design. Emphasis is placed on modular programming for engineering applications.

[Presented by the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering (75%) and by the Department of Mechanical and Mechatronic Engineering (25%)]

*Method of assessment: Examination*

*Home Department: Electrical and Electronic Engineering*

## 18139 Computer Science

### 113 (16) Computer Science for Actuarial Studies (3L, 3P)

Introduction to computer programming from a financial perspective. Basic financial problems are rephrased in terms of analytical problem-solving. Standard imperative programming constructs including types of variables, assignments, if-then-else-and loops, and recursive approaches are covered as needed in financial programming. Static data structures (in particular arrays) and declarative programming models such as spreadsheets are also covered.

*Corequisite modules:*

- *Actuarial Science 112*
- *Mathematics 114*

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### 144 (16) Introductory Computer Science (3L, 3P)

Further formulation and solution of problems by means of computer programming; introductory data structures and algorithms in an object-oriented set-up; key concepts in object orientation: inheritance and polymorphism; design patterns as abstractions for the creation of reusable object-oriented designs; searching and sorting algorithms; complexity theory for the analysis of algorithms; fundamental methods in the design of algorithms; dynamic data structures; regular expressions and finite automata.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Computer Science 113 OR Computer Science 114*

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### 214 (16) Data Structures and Algorithms (3L, 3T)

The classical data structures and algorithms in an object-oriented set-up. Advanced techniques for the analysis of algorithms.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Computer Science 144*

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Mathematics 114*

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### 244 (16) Computer Architecture (3L, 3P)

Basic computer architecture. Programming in machine language and assembly language. Assemblers, binders and loaders. Basic concepts of operating systems; memory management, process management and file systems.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Computer Science 214*

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### 315 (16) Machine Learning (3L, 3T)

Dimension reduction techniques; machine-learning techniques based on maximum likelihood, maximum-posterior and expectation-maximization estimates; modelling using logistic regression, Gaussian mixtures and hidden Markov models.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- Computer Science 144 OR Computer Science E214
- Mathematics 214 OR Applied Mathematics 214 OR Engineering Mathematics 214
- (Both Mathematical Statistics 245 and Mathematical Statistics 246) OR Statistics 318 as a corequisite  
Note: Statistics 318, as a corequisite module, is an alternative to the prerequisite modules of both Mathematical Statistics 245 and 246.

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### 343 (16) Databases and Web-centric Programming (3L, 3P)

Introduction to relational databases. Mapping relational model onto object model. Implementing a database application in the context of the web. Web services.

Server-side scalability. Virtualisation. Cloud Computing.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Computer Science 214

**For programmes in Engineering:**

*Prerequisite modules:*

- Computer Science E 214
- Computer Systems 245

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### 441 (16) Machine Learning

This module is an introduction to selected topics in machine learning.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Computer Science 144
- Mathematical Statistics 245
- Mathematical Statistics 246

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

## 50040 Computer Skills

### 136 (4) Computer skills and digital literacies (2T)

This module fosters essential digital literacies, equipping students with the critical understanding and practical skills necessary to navigate and utilise technology effectively. Beyond basic computer skills, we delve into the core principles of digital citizenship, emphasizing ethical and values-based practices and ensuring your safety and responsible behaviour in the online world. You will learn to leverage the digital systems provided by Stellenbosch University to enhance your learning journey, mastering the tools necessary to manage your digital learning environment with confidence. This includes developing proficiency in word processing, spreadsheet analysis and creating compelling presentations, all while adhering to the standards of scientific reporting and data management. The module emphasises the importance of professional communication and collaboration in digital spaces, preparing you to effectively contribute to and engage within online learning communities. Ultimately, this module aims to cultivate digitally literate, responsible and proficient scholars who can confidently utilise technology to support their academic success and future professional endeavours.

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### 146 (4) Computer skills and digital literacies (2T)

This module is only offered to students that have failed Computer Skills 136, and students that have failed Computer Skills 136 in any particular academic year are required to register for this module in the same academic year.

This module fosters essential digital literacies, equipping students with the critical understanding and practical skills necessary to navigate and utilise technology effectively. Beyond basic computer skills, we delve into the core principles of digital citizenship, emphasizing ethical and values-based practices and ensuring your safety and responsible behaviour in the online world. You will learn to leverage the digital systems provided by Stellenbosch University to enhance your learning journey, mastering the tools necessary

to manage your digital learning environment with confidence. This includes developing proficiency in word processing, spreadsheet analysis, and creating compelling presentations, all while adhering to the standards of scientific reporting and data management. The module emphasises the importance of professional communication and collaboration in digital spaces, preparing you to effectively contribute to and engage within online learning communities. Ultimately, this module aims to cultivate digitally literate, responsible, and proficient scholars who can confidently utilise technology to support their academic success and future professional endeavours.

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### **176 (8) Computer skills (1L, 4T)**

This module is taken by students in the BSc (extended curriculum programmes). Utilisation of computers in computer users' areas on campus. Introduction to an operating system, internet, email, word processing, spreadsheet and presentation software.

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### **272 (5) Computer skills (2L)**

Study load: 35 lectures in total.

The main objective of this module is to equip the student with the relevant skills required to successfully and efficiently perform tasks identified as fundamental to the scientific process. Each topic is presented using an appropriate computer software package. Specific attention is given to the following topics: obtaining relevant literature, data capturing and analysis, creation and technical maintenance of electronic documents for reporting and presentation.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Computer Skills 136 OR Science in Context 178*

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

## **13255 Conceptualising Food Systems**

### **811 (10) Conceptualising food systems**

Thorough scientifically based knowledge and research techniques in the field of the food and nutrition security are reviewed in this module. This will require experience and an understanding of the situation in which the problem is embedded in the food system.

*Home division: Food Science / Agricultural Economics/Human Nutrition*

## **55638 Conservation Ecology**

### **212 (8) Conserving nature (2L, 1P)**

What is biodiversity?; a brief history of biodiversity; the importance of biodiversity; how many species are there?; global patterns in biodiversity; human impacts and species extinctions; maintaining biodiversity; conventions; sustainable use and approaches to conservation.

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

### **244 (16) Conservation censusing (3L, 3P)**

Planning and conducting monitoring and biodiversity surveys for major plant and animal taxa, including indices for river system health and ecological integrity; social censusing and its importance in conservation; develop experience in indices of species richness and diversity; introduction to community composition and differences. Exposure to taxonomic identification of insect orders and small mammal species.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Conservation Ecology 212*

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

### **314 (16) Biome ecology (3L, 3P)**

Introduction to biomes and ecosystem services; key drivers; biomes in social-ecological systems context; biome-level management issues; ecology of tropical and Afrotropical forests, woodlands, savannahs, treeless vegetation types; wetlands; patterns of diversity and endemism.

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*



### **344 (16) Conservation in Social-Ecological Systems (3L, 3P)**

The relationship between society and the natural environment; history, values and philosophy of conservation; environmental and research ethics; government, societal and business influences on conservation; environmental legislation; environmental impact assessment (EIA); challenges in community-based natural resource management; human environmental stressors; the meaning of "the environment" and "nature" to people of various cultural and social backgrounds; conservation management for ecotourism and recreation; social-ecological systems and resilience theory.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Conservation Ecology 314*

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

### **414 (16) Contemporary conservation (3L, 3P)**

Contemporary conservation issues in utilised landscapes; conservation planning; disturbance ecology; grazing; harvesting; ecological monitoring; restoration ecology; current issues in biodiversity and resource conservation, for example: invasive species, ecosystem health and emerging diseases, climate change, genetically modified organisms, pollution. There is a compulsory field trip during the Easter vacation.

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

### **424 (16) Wildlife management (3L, 3P)**

Decision-making in the face of uncertainty. Sustainable harvesting in both terrestrial and marine environments, and wildlife management. The wildlife management (WM) section incorporates the principles of WM, habitat and game assessment, grazing management, sustainable utilisation, game capture and translocation, wildlife diseases, nutritional ecology and contraception methods, human-wildlife conflict/coexistence issues, and planning and executing conservation-based research. Case studies in conservation research are also discussed.

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

### **478 (40) Conservation research project (1L)**

In this module, students work together with an academic supervisor to develop and carry out a conservation research project over the course of their final year of study. The research focus of this conservation ecology research project is agreed upon by the student, supervisor and programme coordinator. The project requires a strong conservation focus, but may cover either the biological, ecological or social realms of the focus.

Students will develop a project proposal that gives a comprehensive summary of relevant literature, defines the research question, and describes research methods. Research is then carried out, generally in the field, although in some cases this may be a lab- or desktop-based study. Data are then collated and analysed. Findings are communicated through a popular communication, such as writing for Farmer's Weekly or National Geographic – to teach students to also address audiences outside of academia, increasing research impact – and a final project report, written in scientific journal format.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Conservation Ecology 314*
- *Conservation Ecology 344*

*Corequisite module:*

- *Conservation Ecology 414*

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

### **444 (16) Conservation in Agriculture and Forestry Landscapes (3L, 3P)**

Biodiversity, whether it is terrestrial or aquatic, is fundamental to ensuring healthy environments. Agriculture and forestry can contribute to biodiversity conservation, creating resilient landscapes through biodiversity conservation, which is the integration of applied ecological, economic, and social concepts to design and manage agriculture and forestry systems for biodiversity conservation across multiple scales. This demonstrates how contemporary techniques for agricultural and forestry landscapes are contributing to regional and landscape conservation. The module aims to showcase the futureproofing of agriculture and forestry through living and dynamic landscapes. Incorporating the latest policies associated with sustainable resource management, it will be demonstrated that it is possible to create agricultural ecosystems that also conserve biodiversity. Integrated into this module will be the philosophy behind conservation, area-wide integrated pest management and restoration in agriculture and forestry. Real-world case studies will demonstrate examples of production, but the core of this module is developing conservation in these utilised landscapes. By using case studies, we highlight action and policies that will ensure the future of biodiversity-friendly agriculture in Africa. We aim to prepare students to understand and address practical conservation in agriculture in real-world situations.

*Home department: Conservation Ecology*



## 14052 Crop Production

### 151 (8) Development of competency profile for crop scientists (1.5L, 1.5P)

Principles and practice of guided self-reflection. Time management, stress management, Getting Things Done 'The art of stress-free productivity' (GTD), work preparedness, CV building, job interviews, modern farming and job prospects, small group sessions with current industry participants.

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### 152 (8) Introduction to applied plant science (1.5L, 1.5P)

Classification systems and classification of agricultural crops; structure of plants of agricultural significance; plant growth regulators; ecological principals and introductory agricultural ecology.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### 214 (16) Plant propagation (3L, 3P)

Principles and practices of plant propagation: brief overview of different crop types and the aim of plant propagation. Plant life cycles and phases and their relative importance in plant propagation. Principles of sexual versus asexual propagation. Seed propagation and seed production. Asexual propagation by means of cuttings, grafting, layering and tissue culture. Propagation of plants from specialised roots and stems. Pathogens during the propagation process and their control. Propagation of specific commercial crops. Legal protection of cultivars.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Biology 124*

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Biology 144 OR Biology 154 OR Crop Production 152*

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### 478 (16) Advanced Crop Production (1L, 2P)

Practically orientated crop production related field, laboratory, meta-analysis or literature investigations using relevant and current experimental approaches and methods of analysis, while addressing topical issues in crop production systems related to food security and environmental challenges. Specialization in one of the following disciplines: Agricultural Economics; Agronomy; Entomology & Nematology; Genetics; Grapevine Sciences; Horticultural Sciences; Plant Pathology or Soil Science.

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

## 53961 Crop Protection

### 152 (8) Introduction to plant protection and improvement (1.5L, 1.5P)

Introduction to the disciplines of plant breeding, plant pathology, entomology, nematology and weed science. Case studies of plant pests, diseases and weeds that have shaped the history of the world and influenced food security. The basic principles of plant improvement for pest and disease management.

*Home department: Plant Pathology*

### 244 (16) Introductory plant pathology and entomology (3L, 3P)

The nature and causes of plant diseases, the impact of pathogens and pests on agriculture, the biology of important pathogens and pests, factors influencing disease development, diagnosis of plant diseases and principles of plant disease control.

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

## 13327 Crops for Extensive Production Systems

### 711 (18) Crops for extensive production systems (3L, 3P)

Identification, morphology and growth requirements of existing and new potentially important food, fibre, medicinal and industrial crops for the winter rainfall area, management practices for sustainable maximum production of the particular crops.

*Home department: Agronomy*

## 14026 Data Science

### 141 (16) Data Science (4L, 2P)

Fundamental data science concepts; data-analytic thinking; types of data; the data cycle; CRISP data mining process; describing a dataset numerically; describing a dataset graphically; organising data; file formats; data manipulation in R software; introduction to predictive modelling; overfitting; data leakage; model evaluation; other data science tasks and techniques; data ethics; communicating results.

*Home department: Statistics and Actuarial Science*

### 241 (16) Data Science (4L, 2P)

Introduction to Python; Python commands and file systems; programming structures; data sources; data collection; optimisation; resampling and the bootstrap; naïve Bayes classification; application of linear models; data ethics.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Data Science 141*
- *Mathematical Statistics 214 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 114 with at least 60% OR Probability Theory and Statistics 144 with at least 60%*

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Mathematical Statistics 214*

*Home department: Statistics and Actuarial Science*

### 316 (16) Data Science (4L, 2P)

In this module approaches to supervised and unsupervised machine learning are discussed.

Supervised learning uses labelled datasets and can be separated into two types of problems, namely classification and regression. Classification problems can be solved by a multivariate technique, namely discriminant analysis, that separates two or more groups of observations based on variables measured on each sample unit. The naïve Bayes classifier is another effective classification algorithm for discriminating between two or more groups. To measure the classification accuracy of these techniques, cross validation and bootstrap resampling procedures are also discussed. In regression problems the relationship between dependent and independent variables is investigated. Popular regression algorithms are regularized regression, principal component regression and partial least-squares regression. For classification and regression problems, tree-based methods, such as random forests and boosting, can also be applied as modelling techniques.

Unsupervised learning uses unlabelled datasets and is associated with tasks in clustering and dimensionality reduction. Clustering is done according to a similarity measure for grouping data objects together. Modern clustering techniques such as k-means, Gaussian mixture models and spectral clustering are discussed. Dimensionality reduction is the statistical technique of reducing the number of random variables in a problem by obtaining a set of principal variables. Specifically, principal component analysis and independent component analysis are discussed.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Data Science 241*

*Corequisite module:*

- *Mathematical Statistics 312*

*Home department: Statistics and Actuarial Science*

### 346 (16) Data Science (4L, 2P)

In this module big data and deep learning are discussed.

Big data refers to data that is so large, fast or complex that it is difficult or impossible to process using traditional methods. The challenges of big data analysis include capturing, storing, searching, sharing, transferring, visualising, querying and updating of data sources.

Cloud computing services are also used to manage big data. Cloud computing is the on-demand availability of computer system resources, especially data storage and computing power, without direct active management by the user.

Natural language processing, a subfield of linguistics, computer science and artificial intelligence, is also applied to big data. Natural language processing is concerned with the interactions between computers and human language, in particular how to program computers to process and analyse large amounts of natural language data so that the computer can automatically perform repetitive tasks.

Neural networks are a subset of machine learning and are at the heart of deep learning algorithms. Neural networks rely on training data to learn and improve the accuracy of the network over time. Once the network

is fine-tuned for accuracy, using backpropagation, it is utilised as a powerful tool to classify and cluster data at a high velocity.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Data Science 316 OR Data Science 344*
- *Mathematical Statistics 312*

*Home department: Statistics and Actuarial Science*

## **14911 Data Science and Computational Thinking**

### **314 (8) Data Science with Python (3L, 3P)**

The purpose of this module is to develop skills and capabilities in data science and computational thinking. The module will emphasize developing and implementation of inferential thinking. This module is accessible to students who have completed a first-level module in mathematics but with no programming skills. The module will teach through extensive use of examples and practical data analysis. The outcome is for students to become comfortable in analysing large datasets and to be able to expand such analysis using Python programming.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Mathematics (Bio) 124 OR Mathematics 114*

*Home department: School for Data Science and Computational Thinking*

### **344 (8) Applied Data Science (3L, 3P)**

This module provides an understanding of the relevance of data science and teaches fundamental data analytic skills through application in agricultural and biological sciences. Students will gain an understanding of how data science can contribute to advancements of these fields. Through practical examples and exercises, students will learn the sequential steps involved in conducting data-driven analyses following good data practices and how to use data science methods to solve real-world problems in these fields.

By the end of the module, students will have developed a deeper understanding of the role of data science in agriculture and biological sciences, apply the steps of the data science lifecycle, collect and prepare data for analysis, conduct exploratory data analysis, visualize data to communicate findings, apply statistical methods to make inferences, make decisions or come to conclusions based on data analysis, and communicate the results of data analysis.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Data Science 314*

*Home department: School for Data Science and Computational Thinking*

## **14735 Data Science Research in Statistical Genetics**

### **471 (40) Data Science Research Assignment in Statistical Genetics**

The research assignment provides students with a comprehensive learning experience that integrates knowledge from previous courses. Students will integrate knowledge and experiences gained from all previous modules and apply these to a data-rich research topic. Students will have the opportunity to synthesise what they have learned and apply that knowledge to new, complex situations. Students should engage in the entire process of solving a real-world data science problem, from collecting and processing actual data, applying suitable and appropriate analytic methods to the problem, and communicating the results in a clear and comprehensible way.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Biotechnology 315*
- *Genetics 314*
- *Genetics 344*
- *Mathematical Statistics 312*
- *Data Science 346*

*Home department: Genetics*

## **12084 Economics**

### **114 (12) Economics (3L, 1T)**

*Problems economists address:* inequality, poverty, economic growth, sustainability, scarcity, choice.

*Economic decision-making:* incentives, relative prices, economic rent, labour, production, opportunity cost.

*Economic relationships and interactions:* game theory, equity, efficiency.

*Markets:* demand and supply, price-taking and competitive markets, elasticity, labour market.

*Market dynamics:* rent-seeking, market failure, externalities and government policies.

*Home department:* Economics

### **144 (12) Economics (3L, 1T)**

*The module introduces students to economic application and policy, with a strong focus on South Africa, by exploring contemporary economic issues:* inflation, unemployment, economic growth, external stability and a fair distribution of income.

*The aggregate economy in the short-run and long-run:* measuring the aggregate economy, the multiplier model, unemployment and fiscal policy, inflation and monetary policy, the money market and the South African Reserve Bank (SARB), technological change and income inequality.

*Globalisation:* international trade, migration and investment.

*Corequisite module:*

- Economics 114

*Home department:* Economics

### **217 (16) Intermediate Microeconomics (3L, 1T)**

This module provides an exploration of microeconomic theory and its applications. Key topics include consumer and producer behaviour, market structures, game theory and welfare economics. Emphasis is placed on applications, fostering critical thinking and analytical skills. The framework integrates theoretical foundations with problem-solving exercises and policy discussions to prepare students for more advanced microeconomic analysis in their third year of studies.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Economics 114

*Home department:* Economics

### **271 (16) Economics (3L, 1T)**

You can only register for this module in 2026 and 2027 if you failed Economics 214 in 2025 or before.

This module provides an exploration of microeconomic theory and its applications. Key topics include consumer and producer behaviour, market structures, game theory and welfare economics. Emphasis is placed on applications, fostering critical thinking and analytical skills. It also takes a modern approach to intermediate macroeconomic theory, emphasizing microeconomic foundations. It begins with the measurement of macroeconomic variables and contemporary issues, followed by key business cycle facts. A detailed exploration of consumer and firm behaviour leads to the development of one-period and two-period models, enabling analysis of policy questions like consumption-savings decisions and government interventions.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Economics 114
- Economics 144

*Home department:* Economics

### **248 (16) Intermediate Macroeconomics (3L, 1T)**

This module takes a modern approach to intermediate macroeconomic theory, emphasizing microeconomic foundations. It begins with the measurement of macroeconomic variables and contemporary issues, followed by key business cycle facts. A detailed exploration of consumer and firm behaviour leads to the development of one-period and two-period models, enabling analysis of policy questions like consumption-savings decisions and government interventions. These models are applied to real-world scenarios, such as the global financial crisis, alongside a labour market model with a focus on South Africa.

The latter part of the module examines monetary policy and international finance, focusing on money, central banking, balance-of-payments, foreign exchange markets and international capital mobility. Students explore global trade imbalances, financial crises, exchange rate regimes and the international monetary system. By

completing this module, students gain the skills to analyse money, interest rates, exchange rates and open-economy dynamics, critically assess economic ideas and interpret global economic developments, particularly in the context of South Africa.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Economics 114
- Economics 144

*Corequisite module:*

- Economics 214 OR Economics 217 OR Economics 271

*Home department: Economics*

### **246 (16) Economics (3L, 1T)**

You can only register for this module in 2026 and 2027 if you failed Economics 244 in 2025 or before.

South African monetary policy.

International trade and finance: the theory of international trade, barriers to free trade, the World Trade Organisation and regional economic integration, the balance of payments, international financial markets, adjustment mechanisms, policy options, exchange rate determination, the international monetary system and South African exchange rate policy.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Economics 114
- Economics 144

*Corequisite module:*

- Economics 214 OR Economics 217 OR Economics 271

*Home department: Economics*

### **318 (24) Economics (4L, 1T)**

*Introduction to econometrics:* statistical concepts, the classical linear model of regression, multicollinearity, autocorrelation, heteroscedasticity, dummy variables, estimation of regression models.

*Macroeconomics:* mathematical techniques, economic growth, business cycle, monetary and fiscal policy.

*Introduction to game theory:* mathematical techniques, different types of games, equilibrium concepts.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Economics 214

*Prerequisite module:*

- Economics 244

*Home department: Economics*

### **348 (24) Economics (4L, 1T)**

This module focuses on the economic policy debate in a developing country. This includes economic policy criteria, structural characteristics of the South African economy, economic thought and systems, and growth and development policies, which include demand and supply aspects of economic growth, sectoral and spatial development, distribution of income and social expenditure, competition policy, environmental economics, labour policy, education and investment in human capital and the macroeconomic policy debate.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Economics 214

*Prerequisite module:*

- Economics 244

*Corequisite module:*

- Economics 318

*Home department: Economics*

## 388 (24) Economics (2L, 2T)

*Introduction to data science for economists:* data scientific techniques applied to data in economics or finance. Topics include programming, visualisation and elementary machine learning methods.

*Labour economics and labour econometrics:* labour market, demand and supply, demographic tendencies, trade unions, the South African labour market.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Economics 214

*Prerequisite module:*

- Economics 244

*Corequisite module:*

- Economics 318

*Home department: Economics*

## 13345 Economics of Sustainable Agriculture (Including Farm Management)

### 876 (8) Economics of sustainable agriculture (including farm management)

The module provides an introduction to the economics of the major aspects of sustainable agriculture. These include market analysis, contractual arrangements, environmental dimension and farm-level decision-making.

#### Learning outcomes

At the end of the module the student is expected to be able to:

- apply basic notions of environmental economics
- appreciate the organisation of supply chains
- explain the basics of price formation process
- explain the basics of competitiveness
- apply the basics of economic multipliers
- appreciate the basics of typical farm modelling as a farming system planning tool
- critically assess the potential of certification to value environmental services
- recognise market forces governing credit and insurance
- evaluate contractual arrangements as to land and labour.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## 49484 Engineering Chemistry

### 123 (15) Chemistry for engineering students (4L, 2T)

Basic concepts, units and dimensions, significant figures, conversion between unit systems; components of matter, atomic structure, the periodic table and chemical bonding; stoichiometry; chemical reactions (acid-base, precipitation and redox); properties of mixtures and solutions; chemical equilibrium; electrochemistry; gas laws, state functions and the relationships between T, P and V; introduction to basic engineering applications.

*Corequisite module:*

- Engineering Mathematics 115

*Home department: Chemical Engineering*

## 46825 Engineering Drawings

### 123 (15) Orthographic drawings (1L, 3P, 3T)

Projection planes; points, lines and planes in space; trace points of lines and trace lines of planes; true lengths and true angles between lines and planes; true angles between planes; new projection planes; interpenetrations; developments; isometric projections. Works drawings: 1st- and 3rd-angle projections; line alphabet; dimensioning; scale; three-view drawing layout; auxiliary views; hidden detail; introduction to sections and cross-hatching. Introduction to 2D CAD and 3D parametric CAD.

*Home department: Mechanical and Mechatronic Engineering*

### **143 (15) Orthographic Drawings (Supplementary module) (Hybrid Format)**

Projection planes; points, lines and planes in space; trace points of lines and trace lines of planes; true lengths and true angles between lines and planes; true angles between planes; new projection planes; interpenetrations; developments; isometric projections. Works drawings: 1st- and 3rd-angle projections; line alphabet; dimensioning; scale; three-view drawing layout; auxiliary views; hidden detail; introduction to sections and cross-hatching. Introduction to 2D CAD and 3D parametric CAD.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Engineering Drawings 123 (must be completed in the same academic year as Engineering Drawings 143. This implies that if you fail Engineering Drawings 143, you must take Engineering Drawings 123 again.)*

*Departmental approval: Registration depends on your overall academic record and the available capacity.*

*Home Department: Mechanical and Mechatronic Engineering*

## **38571 Engineering Mathematics**

### **115 (15) Introductory differential and integral calculus (5L, 2T)**

To take this module, you must have achieved a mark of at least 6 (or 70%) for Mathematics on your NSC or your IEB school-leaving certificate or must have successfully completed the first year of a suitable extended curriculum programme.

Mathematical induction and the binomial theorem; functions; limits and continuity; derivatives and rules of differentiation; applications of differentiation; the definite and indefinite integral; integration of simple functions.

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### **145 (15) Further differential and integral calculus (5L, 2T)**

Complex numbers; transcendental functions; integration techniques; improper integrals; conic sections; polar coordinates; partial derivatives; introduction to matrices and determinants.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Engineering Mathematics 115*

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### **214 (15) Differential equations and linear algebra (4L, 2T)**

Ordinary differential equations of first order; linear differential equations of higher orders; Laplace transforms and applications. Matrices: linear independence, rank, eigenvalues.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Mathematics 114 OR Engineering Mathematics 115 OR Mathematics 144 OR Engineering Mathematics 145*

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Mathematics 144 OR Engineering Mathematics 145*

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

## **59498 Engineering Statistics**

### **314 (15) Engineering statistics (3L, 2.5T)**

Applied probability theory; applications based on discrete and continuous random variables and their probability distributions, such as the normal, gamma, lognormal, log-Pearson type 3 (LP3), Gumbel (EV1) distributions; queuing processes; joint distributions; descriptive statistics and graphical presentations; moments, averages, median and standard deviations; moment generating functions; variation coefficient; skewness coefficient; peaking coefficient; sampling theory; point and interval estimation; hypothesis testing;  $\mu_2$  and K-S testing; simple linear and non-linear regression and correlation analyses; introduction to multiple linear regression; introduction to analysis of variance and experimental design.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Engineering Mathematics 115*
- *Engineering Mathematics 145*

*Home department: Statistics and Actuarial Science*



## **34576 Entomology**

### **314 (16) Insect pest management (3L, 3P)**

Origin and types of insect pests; analysis of an insect pest problem in agriculture; methods of control: Biological control, lures, juvenile hormones, resistant plants, agrotechnical methods, legislative measures and chemical control; properties and testing of pesticides; integrated pest management. Biology and control of key South African pests.

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

### **413 (16) Insect Diversity (3L, 3P)**

This module serves as an introduction to the Arthropoda and its classes, with emphasis placed on the classification, more important morphological and biological and classificatory properties of the Hexapoda. To place the diversity of these classes in an appropriate context, aspects of their functional morphology, including their generalized morphology and anatomy, growth and metamorphosis and physiology will be discussed. We focus primarily on the diversity and classification of the Hexapoda (Protura, Collembola, Diplura and Insecta) with emphasis on ecologically and economically important groups. Practical sessions will be integrated with lectures and will incorporate hexapod morphological analyses and classification techniques, and introduction to insect physiology. Parts of the module will be presented using a blended-learning approach.

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

### **464 (16) Insect conservation ecology (3L, 3P)**

Topics in this module include insects as successful organisms; ethics underpinning their conservation; insects and the conservation of ecosystem processes; threats to insects; management for insect diversity conservation; restoration of insect diversity; conventions, insect response to global change and social issues in insect diversity conservation. These topics are presented in the field of insect conservation, with a special interest in conservation agriculture, but all these principles are applicable across the entire conservation field.

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

## **58335 Entrepreneurship and Innovation Management**

### **214 (16) Introduction to entrepreneurship (4L)**

Introduction to the world of entrepreneurship in South Africa; drivers of entrepreneurship; introduction to the identification of opportunities and development of ideas; the analysis of the entrepreneurial process; feasibility analysis; building a new venture team; assessing a new venture's financial strength and viability; ethics and legal considerations; getting finance; the importance of intellectual property; the importance of growth; growth strategies; buying an existing business.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Business Management 113*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **244 (16) Small business management (4L)**

The scope and nature of small business development in South Africa; the important role of SMMEs in the South African economy; management of entrepreneurial opportunities; small business marketing management, purchasing, manufacturing and financial management; alternative routes to entrepreneurship; financing of opportunities in the market environment; management of growth of the small business; legal requirements which small businesses must adhere to; E-commerce and the entrepreneur; compilation of the business plan with the emphasis on the layout; different elements of the plan, balance sheet, income statement and cash flow statement; broad-based black economic empowerment and opportunities for SMMEs.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Entrepreneurship and Innovation Management 214*

*Corequisite module:*

- *Business Management 113*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **318 (24) Creativity and innovation management (4L)**

The importance of technological innovation; sources of innovation: creativity and organisational creativity; translating creativity into innovation; types and patterns of innovation; standards battles and design dominance; timing of entry; innovation strategies; choosing innovation projects; collaboration strategies;



protecting innovation; introduction to the new product development process.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Entrepreneurship and Innovation Management 214 OR Entrepreneurship and Innovation Management 244*

*Home department: Business Management*

## **26883 Financial Accounting**

### **179 (26) Financial Accounting (4L, 1T)**

This module focusses on the theoretical principles of International Financial Reporting Standards and accounting systems as well as the preparation and presentation of financial statements for different enterprises. This module is equivalent to Financial Accounting 188 (it covers all the same material, but some lectures and tutorials are taught separately). The focus on the separately taught lectures and tutorials will be supplementary conceptual development specifically for students that are part of the Faculty's BCom (Management Sciences) extended curriculum programme.

*Home department: School of Accountancy*

### **188 (24) Financial accounting (4L)**

Theoretical principles of International Financial Reporting Standards; accounting systems; preparation and presentation of financial statements for different enterprises.

*Note:* Students who did not pass Accounting in their Grade 12 year must attend five lectures per week.

*Home department: School of Accountancy*

### **288 (32) Financial Accounting (4L, 1T)**

Continuation of International Financial Reporting Standards; introduction to group statements and treatment of intergroup transactions.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Financial Accounting 178 OR Financial Accounting 188 OR Financial Accounting 179*

*Home department: School of Accountancy*

## **51047 Financial Management**

### **214 (16) Introduction to financial management (3L, 1P)**

Compiling the statement of financial position, the statement of profit or loss and the statement of cash flows; the measurement and evaluation of financial performance with reference to profitability, liquidity and solvency analysis; case studies about financial analysis; introduction to the investment decision; the financing decision; sources of finance; the dividend decision; financial planning and the management of working capital with specific reference to cash, trade receivables and inventory control; financial failures; international financial management.

*Corequisite modules:*

- *Business Management 113*
- *Business Management 142 OR Mathematics 114 OR Mathematics (Bio) 124*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **244 (16) Corporate financial management (3L, 1P)**

The evaluation and interpretation of corporate financial performance by means of detailed ratio analyses and sustainability considerations; share and bond valuation; discussion of the influence of dividend policy on corporate valuations; the influence of financing policy on a firm's value; the effect of behavioural biases and heuristics on investment decisions.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Financial Management 214*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **314 (12) Financial planning and control (2L)**

Standardisation of published financial statements; reclassifying items from financial statements for managerial decision-making; application of financial planning process by means of financial forecasting; calculation of the sustainable growth rate; estimation of an optimal capital structure; the application of free cash flow valuations;

the influence of inflation on annual financial statements.

*Corequisite modules:*

- *Financial Management 214*
- *Financial Management 244 OR Investment Management 254*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **332 (12) Capital investments (2L)**

The application of the following financial selection measures on large capital projects: payback period method, method of the equivalent uniform annual cost, net present value method and the internal rate of return method; the impact of inflation when assessing investment projects and the calculation of the cost of capital; priority determination for multiple mutually exclusive projects.

*Corequisite modules:*

- *Financial Management 214*
- *Financial Management 244 OR Investment Management 254*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **352 (12) Financial management research (2L)**

Identification and formulation of financial management problems and/or opportunities; setting financial research objectives; identifying appropriate research designs; conducting secondary and/or primary research; conducting financial data analysis to achieve research objectives.

*Corequisite modules:*

- *Financial Management 214*
- *Financial Management 244 OR Investment Management 254*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **354 (12) Mergers and acquisitions (2L)**

Processes during mergers and acquisitions; financial and strategic aspects; theories; relevance of competition and other legislation; empirical information; LBOs; MBOs; defensive strategies; joint ventures and alliances; unbundling; management guidelines.

*Corequisite modules:*

- *Financial Management 214*
- *Financial Management 244 OR Investment Management 254*

*Home department: Business Management*

## **13264 Food Chains and Consumers**

### **844 (10) Food chains and consumers**

This theme focuses on providing insight into the agri-food business system, related governance systems and strategies and the role of value chains and how the food chain performance can be improved. Economics, management and marketing terminology and principles will be considered. This module also focuses on the factors impacting human behaviour and the decision-making process regarding food choice.

*Home division: Agricultural Economics*

## **13857 Food Process Engineering**

### **414 (15) Food process engineering fundamentals (3L, 1P, 2T)**

Engineering approach to problem-solving; thermodynamic properties of water and an ideal gas; conservation of mass, momentum and energy; thermodynamic processes in closed and open systems; generation, usage and reticulation of steam; pump and pipe systems; steady-state conduction, convection and radiation; air-water vapour mixtures and air conditioning processes.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Mathematics (Bio) 124*
- *Food Science 244*

*Home department: Mechanical and Mechatronic Engineering*

## **444 (15) Food processing engineering applications (3L, 2T)**

Behaviour, pumping and properties of Newtonian and non-Newtonian fluids; the refrigeration cycle and refrigeration components and equipment; storage of food products by cooling and freezing; heat transfer, including the determination of heat transfer coefficients, boiling and condensation; transient heat transfer during heating, freezing and thawing; mass transfer; thermal processing of foodstuffs; evaporation and concentration; drying theory and drying equipment; mixing; process control.

*Method of assessment: Examination*

*Formula for Final mark:  $P=0,5K+0,5E$*

*Prerequisite module:*

- Food Process Engineering 414

*Home department: Mechanical and Mechatronic Engineering*

## **13267 Food and Nutrition Policies**

### **823 (10) Food and nutrition policies**

This theme focuses on providing insight into the contemporary focus areas in food and nutrition policies in South Africa. It makes students familiar with the principles and the diversity of the South African food and nutrition policies.

*Home division: Human Nutrition*

## **13259 Food Processing and Preservation**

### **815 (10) Food processing and preservation**

This theme focuses on providing insight into the most important unit operations applied in the food industry and the impact of these unit operations on the quality of food products and the most important novel food processing technologies applied in the food industry and on postharvest handling, energy-efficiency water use and water treatment.

*Home department: Food Science*

## **13256 Food Safety, Hazards & Risks**

### **812 (10) Food safety, hazards & risks**

This theme focuses on providing insight into microbiological, chemical and physical aspects of food safety, the lines of defence and responsibilities in prevention and the quality assurance systems and legislation in place to reduce risks in relation to food.

*Home department: Food Science*

## **21210 Food Science**

### **144 (16) Introduction to food science (3L, 3P)**

An overview of food science as a discipline and a career choice. Introduction to the principles and practice of food science and technology. Interrelationships between the chemical, physical, biological, nutritional and general quality properties of food products as affected by formulation, processing and packaging. Current issues in food science and ethics in the food industry. May include factory visits.

*Home department: Food Science*

### **214 (16) Commercial food processing and preservation I (3L, 3P)**

Commercial food processing: introduction to principles and methods; microbial growth and food spoilage and control; technological principles of heating, cold storage, freezing, dehydration and concentration; effect of processing on nutritional value, sensory characteristics and microbial growth. May include factory visits.

*Home department: Food Science*

### **244 (16) Commercial food processing and preservation II (3L, 3P)**

Commercial food processing and preservation: technological principles of chemical control and irradiation and the effect on nutritional value, sensory characteristics and microbial growth; chemical and physical characteristics of milk; technological principles of fermented foods and enzymes; environmental management in the food industry. May include factory visits.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Food Science 214

*Home department: Food Science*

### **314 (16) Animal food products (3L, 3P)**

Meat, fish and poultry structure and composition. Chemical and biochemical reaction processes. Preservation and product spoilage. Processing of emulsion products. Overview of the meat, poultry, and fish industries with special reference to the main products, production problems, quality factors and legislative and regulatory control. May include factory visits.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Food Science 244

*Home department: Food Science*

### **324 (16) Nutrition for the food scientist (3L, 3P)**

Nutrients and implications for food product development, processing and preservation. Carbohydrates, proteins, fats, vitamins and minerals pertaining to human nutrition. Critical analysis of commercial food products concerning nutritional aspects, legislation and labelling.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Food Science 244

*Home department: Food Science*

### **333 (16) Quality management systems (3L, 3P)**

Principles and advantages of quality and food safety management systems; fundamental principles of food safety, hygiene and the impact of food processing on food safety; prerequisite programmes; definitions, twelve stages and seven principles of HACCP; construction of a process flow diagram; identification of food risks, physical, chemical and biological food hazards and critical control points; drafting of the HACCP plan and completion of the HACCP control chart.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- Food Science 214
- Food Science 244

*Home department: Food Science*

### **344 (16) Cereal science (3L, 3P)**

Cereal, milling and baking science. Chemical composition of cereals. Milling processes and determination of chemical and rheological quality. Physical, chemical and functional characteristics of ingredients and principles of processing of wheat products. Manufacturing of baked products, pasta products and breakfast cereals. Manufacturing of products from other cereals such as barley, oats, rice, maize and sorghum.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Food Science 244

*Home department: Food Science*

### **353 (16) Food and beverage biochemistry (3L, 3P)**

The objective of this module is to provide students with a fundamental understanding of the biochemistry of food products as well as the analytical techniques required for analysis of foodstuffs. The course material is therefore focussed on proteins and their role and function in food systems as well as the use of enzyme technology in the manufacturing of food products.

This includes studying the biochemistry of enzymes in food production and spoilage as well as the

characteristics, application and analysis of proteins and enzymes in the food industry.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Biochemistry 214
- Biochemistry 244
- Chemistry 264

*Prerequisite module:*

- Applied Chemistry 334

*Home department: Food Science*

### **354 (16) Sensory analysis and process control (3L, 3P)**

Introduction to sensory science; consumer sensory analysis, statistical analysis of data; correlation of data obtained through physical measurement and sensory analysis.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Food Science 244
- Biometry 242

*Home department: Food Science*

### **414 (16) Food packaging (3L, 3P)**

Packaging strategy to safely and cost-effectively deliver food products to the consumer; packaging design and development; new trends and innovations; food bio-deterioration and packaging requirements for different preservation techniques; functions of packaging; packaging sectors (metal, glass, plastics, paper/paperboard); quality and shelf life of packaged products; interaction between food product and packaging (migration, scalping, taints); selection of suitable pack types packaging materials and pack types for specific food products; modified atmosphere, active and intelligent packaging.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- Food Science 244

*Home department: Food Science*

### **478 (48) Trial design and product development (3L, 6P)**

Process of product development, legislation, marketing and labelling of food products. Identification of product niche markets and product criteria, market evaluation and trends. Formulation development. Evaluation of sensory characteristics, cost and nutritional content. Proximal analyses. Food safety. Group and individual product development. Product development includes market research, product development, evaluation, use of measuring instruments, measuring techniques, data processing, analyses, interpretation and reporting. Problem diagnosis. Project management programme. Compulsory industry training and report.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Food Science 314
- Food Science 324
- Food Science, 333,
- Food Science 344,
- Food Science 354

*Corequisite module:*

- Food Science 488

*Home department: Food Science*

### **488 (32) Food chemistry and analysis (3L, 3P)**

Advanced analysis of foods. Chemistry of proteins, carbohydrates, fats, enzymes, water, food additives and complex food systems.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Chemistry 214
- Applied Chemistry 334
- Food Science 353

*Prerequisite module:*

- Food Science 344

*Home department: Food Science*

## **13266 Food Security Project Analysis**

### **822 (10) Food security project analysis**

This theme focuses on providing insight into the planning and implementation of nutrition focused interventions and the monitoring and evaluation of the performance, relevance and effects of these interventions.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **11290 Forest Science**

### **171 (24) Introduction (2L, 2P)**

Introduction to forest and wood products science, global forest resources, the forest and wood products industry locally and internationally, plantation systems; silvicultural systems and agroforestry; an introduction to, and terminology of, forestry engineering; forest management, forest economics and forest policy. Composition of wood, decay, preservation, processing, sawmill layout, wood defects, grading, wood products, pulp and paper. One week of practical work in June or September is to be completed satisfactorily as part of this module.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **212 (8) Natural forest ecosystems (2L, 2P)**

The importance of natural forests and their functions, including products for livelihoods and industry and the management of woodlands and savannahs for sustainability; classification of forests based on structure and function; characterisation of natural forests based on structure and layering; species composition and diversity; succession concepts and theory; silvicultural systems and sustainable management of natural forests; the ecological and socio-economic sustainability methods of natural tropical forests, including criteria and indicators for sustainable forest management; certification and management of non-timber forest products.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **254 (16) Forest mensuration and inventory (3L, 3P)**

Measurement of diameter and height, and determination of volume, form and density of trees, stands of timber and forest products. Measurement and estimation of wood properties and product quality in standing trees; quantitative description of forest structure, sampling techniques and their application in forest inventory. Use of remote sensing for forest measurement and assessment.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Mathematics (Bio) 124 OR Engineering Mathematics 115*

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **334 (16) Forest growth and yield science (3L, 3P)**

Theory of tree growth, site evaluation; development of site index equations; growing stock and stand density; developing volume and taper equations; prediction of current yield; tree and forest growth models; prediction of future yield, modelling wood property variation.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **355 (16) Forest finance, economics, policy and marketing (3L, 3P)**

Background to the forestry business environment in South Africa; International forest policy and processes; Forestry finance; financial analysis and feasibility studies of forestry projects; Valuation of land and plantations; forest resource economics; Basic principles of forest product marketing; international forestry marketing; timber and non-timber forestry products; forestry business environment.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **356 (16) Silviculture I (3L, 3P)**

Environmental factors that influence tree and stand growth; species-site-market matching; site preparation; plantation establishment and regeneration; vegetation management (including coppice management, pruning and thinning); integrated pest and disease management.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **364 (16) Timber harvesting (3L, 3P)**

Introduction to timber-harvesting; timber-harvesting nomenclature/terminology, equipment and systems; time study, time components, production, productivity and machine and harvesting systems costing; evaluation and system selection; operational and tactical harvest planning; ergonomics and forest work-

science, health and safety in forest operations; impact of harvesting on the environment; harvesting of biomass.

One week of practical work (power-saw course) in September of the second year to be completed satisfactorily as part of this module.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Forest Science 254*

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **414 (8) Silviculture II (2L, 2P)**

The eco-physiological basis for forest production; carbon cycling and carbon sequestration; effects of silvicultural practices and environmental factors on stand growth and environmental sustainability; nutritional management and nutrient cycles; integrated fire management.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **424 (16) Forest management and planning (3L, 3P)**

Principles of business management; peculiarities in forest production systems; decision-making and decision support in forest management; planning techniques; classification and subdivision of land; annual planning of operations; scheduling of logging operations.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Forest Science 254*

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **434 (16) Forest roads and transport (3L, 3P)**

Introduction to road construction materials and materials testing and pavement design. Road transport terminology/ nomenclature and applicable legislation; Introduction to access development; forest road network planning and management; influencing factors and road placement techniques. Road construction; road maintenance and drainage; impacts of roads on the environment. Introduction to secondary timber transport. Introduction to logistics.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Forest Science 364*

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **435 (8) Silviculture III (2L, 2P)**

Genetic tree improvement of forestry species; principles and practices of tree propagation and nursery management; principles of sexual and asexual tree propagation; population genetics, quantitative traits and continuous variation within forestry species; developing, monitoring and evaluating nursery and tree improvement experiments.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Genetics 214*

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **442 (1) Experiential work (1P)**

Three weeks of practical work during the four years of study. Two-week study tour during the winter recess of the fourth year.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **468 (32) Research or management project (3L, 3P)**

A study of a management unit in the forest and wood industry.

The data collected at the management unit are analysed, processed and used for the compilation of a comprehensive management plan on the basis of which the module will be assessed

Or

Independent execution of a theoretical and/or practical investigation in any forest science or wood science related field, and the submission of a comprehensive research report.

*No examination. The class mark serves as final mark.*

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*



## **724 (32) Tree propagation**

Plant propagation of forestry species, principles and practices of tree propagation and nursery management; principles of sexual and asexual tree propagation; seed management principles.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

## **771 (32) Applied geo-information sciences**

The use of position estimation (GNSS), LiDAR, remote sensing and geographic information systems (GIS) in the context of natural resource research and management (agriculture, forestry, conservation); spatial awareness, the nature of spatial data, data models, co-ordinate systems and map projections; sources of spatial data; position logging, data capturing using LiDAR, camera and drone or satellite sensors; data processes: capture, ordering, storage and manipulation; specific emphasis on extracting information and the analysis of spatial patterns in the context of natural resources; visual output for research publication.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

## **772 (32) Silviculture**

Basic forest eco-physiology; silvicultural systems; characteristics of commercially important species and hybrids; site-species-market matching; stand regeneration; site, vegetation and nutrient management; pruning; thinning; risk management and sustainability.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

## **773 (32) Timber harvesting and transport logistics**

Timber-harvesting techniques and nomenclature/terminology, harvesting methods and systems selection; tactical and operational harvest planning; forest biomass; work/time study; machine and system costing and ergonomics; forest road and timber transport management and logistics.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

## **774 (32) Forest inventory and yield prediction**

Coverage of forest mensuration techniques to determine tree diameter, tree height, stem form and volume, stem weight, biomass and carbon content; quantitative characterisation methods of forest structure; layout and implementation of forest inventories in natural and plantation forests; consideration of spatial aspects as well as aspects of accuracy and efficiency of inventories; theories of tree growth; tree growth and its relation to wood quality; simulation of tree and stand growth with empirical models.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

## **775 (32) Forest management**

Forestry planning and planning systems, forestry business environment and levels of planning; forest finance and economic analysis, forest investments, trade in forest products, forestry markets, valuation of forests, land and services; international resource policies, REDD, carbon trade, renewable energy policies, forest certification.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

## **776 (32) Tree improvement and propagation**

Genetic tree improvement and propagation of forestry species; principles and practices of tree improvement and propagation; management of research programmes; genetic traits and continuous variation within forestry species; selective processes and testing.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

## **780 (24) Forest science project**

Research in the context of the forestry value chain; research design and methods; data capture and analysis; formulation of results and conclusions.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

# **13263 Functional Foods and Alternative Proteins**

## **843 (10) Functional foods and alternative proteins**

This theme focuses on providing insight into health-promoting foods, the use of genetically modified crops and their applicability to food and nutrition security as well as the concept of nutritional genomics and its impact on preventing nutrition disorders.

*Home division: Food Science*



## 10478 Genetic Data Analysis

### 413 (8) Genetic data analysis

The Genetic Data Analysis module is aimed at the application of population and quantitative genetics theory in the analysis and interpretation of molecular genetic data. Specific emphasis is placed on acquiring practical skills for the composition of genetic datasets, conducting appropriate statistical analyses for answering particular research questions, and the interpretation of results within a biologically relevant context. Examples are taken from a number of fields, including agricultural, conservation and medical genetics, and used as a training model on a continuous basis.

*Home department: Genetics*

## 10481 Genetics

### 411/711 (16) Molecular Techniques

The advancement in the field of molecular genetic techniques has revolutionised genetics and many of its applications. This module provides a theoretical platform (lectures, discussions, etc.) with concurrent hands-on practical sessions, which include DNA and RNA characterisation and manipulation.

*Home department: Genetics*

### 715 (16) Molecular Techniques

The advancement in molecular genetic techniques has revolutionised genetics and many of its applications. This module provides a theoretical platform (lectures, discussions, etc.) with concurrent hands-on practical sessions, which include DNA and RNA characterisation and manipulation.

*Home department: Genetics*

## 13285 Genetics

### 214 (16) Introductory genetics (3L, 3P)

The fundamental concepts that underlie the inheritance of biological traits are studied with reference to the genotype-phenotype paradigm, and the molecular basis of genetic diversity. Cellular mechanisms and components, including the cell cycle; mitosis and meiosis; chromosomes, and genes are related to the principles of heredity: Mendelian genetics and extensions; linkage and recombination; linkage analysis and chromosome mapping; sexual reproduction and sex determining chromosomes; and chromosomal aberrations. The implications of such processes are further discussed at the organismal and population levels of biology with an introduction to population and quantitative genetics: population diversity; genotype and allele frequencies; the Hardy-Weinberg law and deviations; and complex and multifactorial traits.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Biology 124*

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Biology 144 OR Biology 154 OR Animal Science 144 OR Crop Protection 152*
- *Mathematics (Bio) 124 OR Mathematics 114 OR Mathematics 144 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 144*

*Home department: Genetics*

### 244 (16) Introductory molecular biology (3L, 3P)

The biology of the molecule of life. The structure of double-stranded DNA; the processes of replication and recombination of DNA; the deciphering and nature of the genetic code; the processes of transcription and translation; protein structure and function; the regulation of gene expression in prokaryotes and eukaryotes; DNA mutations; DNA repair and transposable elements; the construction and analysis of DNA clones; applications and ethics of recombinant DNA technology; introduction to bioinformatics.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Genetics 214*

*Home department: Genetics*

### 314 (16) Genomes and genome analysis (3L, 3P)

The module focuses on the organisation, structure and functionality of genomes and covers the following aspects: genome structure, genome organisation, genome function and methods to study genomes. Chromosome structure and organisation are also studied. Other complementary topics include introductory

bioinformatics to study genomes; chloroplast and mitochondrial genomes; genome models; genetics of development.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Genetics 244*

*Home department: Genetics*

### **324 (16) Molecular population genetics (3L, 3P)**

The genetic structure and dynamics of populations are investigated, especially with the use of molecular markers; including, frequencies of alleles and genotypes; heterozygosity, linkage disequilibrium; random mating and the Hardy-Weinberg principle. Factors that determine genetic variation: mutation, migration, selection and population size; subdivided- and genetic relationships between populations are also discussed. Emphasis is placed on applications in molecular population genetics; phylogenetics and population genomics.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Genetics 214*

*Corequisite module:*

- *Genetics 244*

*Home department: Genetics*

### **344 (16) Advanced topics in molecular genetics (3L, 3P)**

Various advanced topics are addressed in this module and may include the following: diagnostic applications in human genetics; DNA fingerprinting and forensic science; applications from genome projects; personalised medicine and pharmaco-genetics; neurogenetics; epigenomics; genetic modification; gene therapy; genome editing; synthetic biology; viruses and the exploitation of their genomes.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Genetics 244*

*Home department: Genetics*

### **354 (16) Quantitative genetics (3L, 3P)**

Quantitative traits and continuous variation; components of phenotypic and genetic variances; resemblance between relatives; estimation of heritability and breeding value; selection methods and genetic improvement; correlated traits; multiple traits selection; principles of marker-based selection; mapping and characterising of quantitative trait loci.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Genetics 324*
- *(Both Biometry 212 and Biometry 242) OR (Both Psychology 243 and Psychology 253) OR*
- *(Mathematical Statistics 214) OR (Biodiversity and Ecology 212)*

*Home department: Genetics*

### **414 (16) Plant breeding techniques (3L, 3P)**

Plant breeding objectives; reproduction in plants; cell and tissue culture; breeding strategies for self- and cross-pollinating crops; the utilisation of hybrid vigour; mutation breeding; breeding for insect and disease resistance; variations in chromosome number and its exploitation in breeding programmes; plant breeders' rights.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Genetics 344*

*Home department: Genetics*

## **13594 Genomics**

### **716 (8) Genomics**

A good understanding of the genome, as well as the effective analysis thereof, is a prerequisite to succeed in plant, microbe and animal improvement, especially considering matters associated with the complexity of genomes. This module aims to improve your understanding of the fundamentals in plant genetics and genomics. Concepts like genetic manipulation, gene regulation and expression, as well as technologies to study these concepts, will be discussed.

*Home department: Genetics*

## 64165 Geo-Environmental Science

### 124 (16) Introduction to human-environmental systems (3L, 3P)

Nature of human geography; Demography of world population; Food resources; Urbanisation: models of urban structure, functional areas in cities, cities in developing countries; Politico-geographical organisation: nations and states in conflict, regions in the news; Environmental systems on a global scale: fluvial, arid, karst, coastal and glacial environments; Ecosystems and humans; Utilisation of environmental resources; global occurrence, use and depletion of non-renewable energy, water and soil resources; Practical mapping and graphics.

*Home department: Geography and Environmental Studies*

### 154 (16) Introduction to earth systems science (3L, 3P)

Introduction to Earth Systems Science; Internal earth processes; Mineral- and rock-forming processes; Origin of magma and igneous rocks; External structure of the earth; Formation of continents; Plate tectonics; Sedimentary rocks and the geological record; Geological time scale; Metamorphic rocks and mountain building; Geology of South Africa; Energy and mineral resources; Humans and tectonics: earthquakes and volcanoes; The hydrosphere; Surface-water processes; Groundwater processes; Theory of the origin and evolution of life.

*Home department: Earth Sciences*

## 12923 Geographical Information Technology

### 214 (16) Geographical Information Systems (3L, 3P)

Introductory overview and comprehension of GIS in the context of geo-information science; the nature of geographical data, data models, coordinate systems and map projections; GIS processes: data capturing, ordering and storage, manipulation and analysis; map design and cartographic visualisation with a GIS; GIS applications.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Mathematics 114 OR Mathematics (Bio) 124*

*Home department: Geography and Environmental Studies*

### 241 (16) Spatial data management (3L, 3P)

Map projections and coordinate systems; spatial data modelling (e.g. vector, raster, object-orientated); topology and topological dimensions; topological-dimension conversions; geodatabases; data model and format conversions; data generalisation and aggregation.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Geographical Information Technology 141 OR Geographical Information Technology 214*

*Home department: Geography and Environmental Studies*

### 312 (16) Spatial analysis (3L, 3P)

Query operations and query languages; Geometric measures; Spatial analytical operations; Surface analysis; Geostatistics; Network analysis; Analysis design; Fuzzy sets.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Geographical Information Technology 214 OR Geographical Information Technology 241*

*Home department: Geography and Environmental Studies*

## 13872 Grapevine Sciences

### 214 (12) Grapevine plant materials and their growth and metabolism (2L, 3P)

Grapevine resources for wine and table grape production (rootstock and scion cultivars and varieties); ampelography; seasonal cycles; vine growth and metabolism.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **244 (16) Resource allocation and physiology of grapevines (3L, 3P)**

Resource allocation and physiology of grapevines, the latter including vegetative, reproductive, ripening and stress physiology.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Grapevine Sciences 214*

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **312 (8) Table and raisin grape production (2L, 3P)**

The global industries. Climate and other requirements for table and raisin grape production. Cultivars, rootstocks, nursery vine quality. Vegetative and reproductive development. Trellis systems and vine development. Production practices linked to the seasonal cycle of the grapevine (pruning, dormancy management, canopy management, crop control, bunch preparation). External and internal fruit quality. Maturity indexing, harvest and post-harvest practices. Compiling production, harvest and post-harvest plans for two table grape cultivars (one labour intensive and one not labour intensive) OR for two raisin grape cultivars. Case study of a commercial unit's implementation of a production plan, as well as the harvest and post-harvest processes of these two cultivars.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **314 (12) Grapevine improvement/propagation, establishment and cultivation practices (2L, 3P)**

The improvement and propagation of grapevine material, grapevine development and the maintenance of grapevines through pruning. Detailed knowledge of nursery practices, grapevine planting and training, and pruning systems and their application in different scenarios will be shared.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Grapevine Sciences 214*
- *Grapevine Sciences 244*

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **344 (12) Trellising systems and canopy management: pests, disease and abnormalities (2L, 3P)**

The basis for choosing the appropriate training/trellising system and the appropriate canopy management programme. The identification of pests, diseases and abnormalities (including nutrient deficiency/toxicity) is covered, along with appropriate interventions.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Grapevine Sciences 314*

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **444 (16) Advanced viticulture (3L, 3T, 3P)**

This module provides a theoretical and practical basis for identifying and managing variability within vineyards, with a focus on maximising yield and quality while minimising environmental impacts by optimizing the use of natural resources (soil and water) and chemical applications (fertilizers, and pesticides and herbicides). The implementation of this concept is accomplished by the analysis of local variation in factors that influence grapevine yield and quality (soil, topography, microclimate, vine health, vegetative growth, etc.) using remote sensing techniques (proximal sensors, aerial platforms and satellites) in combination with geographic information system (GIS) and basic geostatistics principles for generating spatial variability maps of the vineyards.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Grapevine Sciences 344*

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **452 (8) Grape farming systems and business models (2L, 3P)**

Table and raisin grape production systems to produce table grapes/raisins for desired quality and market requirement outcomes. Market access 2-day accredited short course (including GLOBALGAP or similar quality traceability system), compiling production, harvest and post-harvest plans for a commercial unit. Case

study of a commercial unit's implementation of a production plan, as well as the harvest and post-harvest processes.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- Grapevine Sciences 314
- Grapevine Sciences 344

*Corequisite module:*

- Grapevine Sciences 444

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

## **13710 Grapevine and Wine Sciences**

### **142 (8) Introduction to grapevine and wine sciences (1.5L, 1.5P)**

Basic grape morphology and production directions. Wine grape cultivars. An introduction to the composition of grapes, must and wine, as well as micro-organisms in winemaking. The fundamentals of alcoholic fermentation, winery equipment and production methods. An introduction to wine styles and wine evaluation.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **212 (8) Introduction to grapevine and wine microbiology (1.5L, 1.5P)**

History of wine microbiology, description of micro-organisms associated with the grapevine and wine environments and practical ways to isolate, identify and manage their growth, basic biochemical pathways pertaining to wine fermentation.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **278 (8) Practical Project (1): Integrated grapevine and wine sciences (2L, 2P)**

Application of viticultural and oenological knowledge contained in first- and second-year modules in which critical academic skills are demonstrated. Presentation of a photographic/electronic portfolio, a literature review, a vineyard plan and a wine tasting. Basic principles of entrepreneurship and related skills and formulating an industry-related individual idea/innovation.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **378 (16) Practical Project (2): Integrated grapevine and wine sciences (2L, 2P)**

Application of viticultural and oenological knowledge contained in second- and third-year modules in which critical academic skills are demonstrated. Presentation of scientific reports, portfolios, process flow charts, compliant wine labels, a basic wine costing and marketing plan and a wine tasting. Entrepreneurial principles (industry-related idea filtering in a "company" team/group, lean canvas and basic product/service prototype development).

*Prerequisite module:*

- Grapevine and Wine Sciences 278

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **444 (8) International terroir and wines (2L, 3P)**

This module introduces the student to the terroir concept in grapevine and wine science and explores viticultural management practices and wine style decision-making under 'normal' and rapidly changing climatic conditions. It introduces the main characteristics (typicality) of international and local wines associated with specific terroirs.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Grapevine Sciences 344

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **454 (8) The Future of Wine (2L, 3P)**

The module will provide an overview of the drivers of change in the wine industry, including influential people and the relevance of innovation, emerging technologies and entrepreneurship in the context of a changing world. This module will also accommodate the completion and final evaluation of the entrepreneurship capstone project.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

## **478 (60) Industry Internship (3T, 3P)**

This module utilises a work-integrated learning strategy to enhance practical viticultural and winemaking experience in the industry under the guidance of academic and industry mentors. Experience in all aspects of cellar and vineyard management. Identification of a relevant industry-related problem or topic in the workplace and executing an experiment or literature review and/or analysis from a scientific viewpoint. Working in teams and individually to manage vines, monitor ripening, produce wine, conduct experiments where applicable, write a project report and present results and write a reflection on experiences.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- Grapevine Sciences 214
- Grapevine Sciences 244
- Grapevine Sciences 314
- Wine Sciences 214
- Wine Sciences 244
- Wine Sciences 314
- Grapevine and Wine Sciences 278

*Prerequisite modules:*

- Grapevine Sciences 344
- Wine Sciences 344
- Grapevine and Wine Sciences 378

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

## **18007 Honours Project in Genetics**

### **741 (64) Honours Project in Genetics**

The research project is the main component of the Honours programme. This module involves the planning, execution, analysis and reporting of hands-on practical research which is performed within an established research group.

*Home department: Genetics*

## **39632 Horticultural Science**

### **222 (8) Fruit production (1.5L, 1.5P)**

Overview of the deciduous fruit industry with emphasis on technology of fruit production, including rootstocks, vegetative growth, bearing habits, delayed foliation, flowering, pollination and fertilization, fruit set, fruit thinning, maturity standards, principles of pruning and training.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Crop Production 152 OR Biology 154

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### **314 (16) Deciduous fruit production (3L, 3P)**

Biology and technology of deciduous fruit production (pome fruit and stone fruit). Deciduous fruit industry, bearing habits, rootstocks, vegetative development, shoot growth, growth reactions to bending and pruning of shoots. Carbohydrate and nitrogen reserves. Eco-, para- and endo-dormancy. Reproductive development, flower formation, fruit set, crop load management, fruit growth, fruit ripening.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Crop Production 214

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### **342 (8) Citrus production (1.5L, 1.5P)**

Biology and technology of citrus production. Rootstocks, nursery tree quality, vegetative development, shoot and root growth. Reproductive development, fruit growth, external and internal fruit quality.

*Prerequisite module:*

- Crop Production 214

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### **352 (8) Ornamental, foliage and aromatic plant production systems (1.5L, 1.5P)**

Biology and technology of the production of cut flowers and foliage plants, including orchard-based fynbos production. Production prerequisites for selected flower types and fynbos. Control of flower initiation, scheduling of flowering time and harvesting, colour and flavour development and other quality characteristics.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Crop Production 214*

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### **362 (8) Subtropical fruit production (1.5L, 1.5P)**

Biology and technology of subtropical fruit production. Bearing habits, rootstocks, nursery tree quality, vegetative development, shoot and root growth. Reproductive development, fruit growth, external and internal fruit quality. The focus is on avocado and macadamia, with reference to other subtropical crops.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Crop Production 214*

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### **434 (16) Applied plant physiology and tree architecture (3L, 3P)**

Lectures: Underlying physiology of growth, development and production practices of horticultural crops. Correlative phenomena and the role of plant hormones supported by an overview of relevant cell, tissue and organ anatomy as well as basic genetic principles. Overview of environmental perception and acclimation/adaptation. Dormancy as morphogenetic and survival mechanism. Physiology of growth cessation, hardening, induction and progression of dormancy, rest breaking and branching. Tree architecture and training systems, principles and techniques of tree manipulation and the role of rootstocks. Integration of the above with knowledge on production practices gained in preceding modules.

*Practicals:* Inter alia lectures by industry specialists on relevant pre-harvest topics as well as visits to fruit production areas to illustrate and support the module content.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Horticultural Science 314*

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### **444 (16) Postharvest physiology and technology (3L, 3P)**

Postharvest physiology of fresh plant products: structure and composition of the product, role of respiration and ethylene metabolism, fresh plant-product ripening and senescence, physiological defects or disorders, food safety.

Postharvest technology: water relations and psychrometrics, quality and maturity parameters, harvest and packing, cooling and storage technology such as controlled atmosphere, transport of fresh plant products.

Plant products that are discussed to illustrate principles include deciduous fruit (pome, stone and table grapes) as well as some tropical and subtropical crops, cut flowers and vegetables.

*Practicals:* A physiological-disorder defect identification project, a series of lectures by industry specialists on topics such as postharvest problems, logistics and handling of fresh product and ripening, ethylene inhibitors commercially, visits to the Cape Town market in Epping, pack houses and cold stores, as well as a fresh-cut facility.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Biochemistry 244*

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

### **714 (16) Deciduous fruit production (3L, 3P)**

Seasonal vegetative and reproductive developmental biology of deciduous fruit (pome and stone fruit): shoot, flower formation, fruit set, fruit growth and ripening of fruit. Production technologies to ensure a sustainable production of high-quality fruit: bearing habits, rootstocks, bending and pruning of shoots, mechanical and chemical regulation of crop load. Endogenous tree dynamics: Eco-, para- and endo-dormancy, carbohydrate and nitrogen reserves.

*Home department: Horticultural Science*



## **742 (8) Citrus physiology and technology (1.5L, 1.5P)**

The physiology, biology and technology aspects involved with the aim of optimizing citrus production. Manipulations of the citrus physiology with choices of genetic material and plant growth regulators to obtain higher yield and improved fruit quality.

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

## **752 (8) Ornamental and foliage plant production systems (1.5L, 1.5P)**

Biology and technology of the production of cut flowers and foliage plants, such as roses, chrysanthemums, tulips (geophytes), also including orchard-based fynbos production and geophytes. Production prerequisites for selected flower types and fynbos. Control of flower initiation, scheduling of flowering time and harvesting, colour development and implementation of optimum postharvest practices.

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

## **762 (8) Subtropical fruit production (1.5L, 1.5P)**

Biology and technology of subtropical fruit production. Bearing habits, rootstocks, nursery tree quality, vegetative development, shoot and root growth. Reproductive development, fruit growth, external and internal fruit quality. Postharvest of subtropical fruit. Relevant seminar topics will encourage research. The focus is on avocado and macadamia, with reference to other subtropical crops.

*Home department: Horticultural Science*

## **13596 Human and Animal Genetics**

### **712 (8) Human and animal genetics**

This module focuses on historical and current medical and ethical aspects of human and animal genetics in practice. By means of lectures, guest speakers and round-table discussions, etc. the latest technology, applications and consequences of genetics will be reviewed.

*Home department: Genetics*

## **13257 Human Economic Development**

### **813 (10) Human economic development**

This theme focuses on providing insight into the concept, theories and measures of economic development. It serves to further examine the extreme contrast not only between developed and developing countries, but also the different livelihood situations between population groups/families within the countries.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **44792 Industrial Ergonomics**

### **414 (15) Industrial ergonomics (3L, 2T)**

Operation analysis, work standards; reduction of setup times, training practices, remuneration, anthropometry, workstation and tool design, man/machine interfaces, work physiology and biomechanics, work design, cognitive work, connecting the human to the cloud, aspects of occupational health and safety.

*Home department: Industrial Engineering*

## **47422 Industrial Programming**

### **244 (15) Industrial programming (2L, 3T)**

Use of spreadsheets: data manipulation, numerical methods, graphs, basic financial calculations, planning and analysis of scenarios and optimising. Visual Basic for Applications for spreadsheet use. Basic computer communication. Theory and application of forecasting with emphasis on spreadsheet applications.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Engineering Mathematics 145*

*Home department: Industrial Engineering*



## **44776 Industrial Psychology (Special)**

### **354 (12) Industrial psychology (Special) (3L)**

*Human resource management:* human resource planning, recruitment, selection, induction, training and development, performance appraisal, compensation management, labour turnover, absenteeism, health and safety.

*Labour relations:* field of study, organised labour, role of employers; labour legislation.

*Organisational behaviour:* introduction and orientation, organisational design, the individual, groups and teamwork, motivation, leadership, organisational effectiveness.

*Home department:* Industrial Psychology

## **10475 Integrated Plant Metabolism**

### **713 (8) Integrated Plant Metabolism**

The underlying principles and current status of the following topics will be discussed: source-sink relations, phloem loading and unloading; compartmentalisation of metabolism; interconversion of starch and sucrose; cell wall components; gluconeogenesis; protein phosphorylation and metabolism; integration of nitrogen and sugar metabolism; sugars as metabolic signals.

*Home department:* Genetics

## **14213 Intercultural Communication (Eng)**

### **113 (8) Introduction to Intercultural Communication for Engineers (2L, 3T)**

Dimensions of culture, such as individualism and collectivism, power distance, uncertainty avoidance, and masculinity and femininity. The "Describe-Analyse-Evaluate" framework. Barriers to effective intercultural communication, such as stereotyping and prejudice. Writing assignments related to intercultural communication in the engineering context, with introduction to coherence, style and referencing. Introduction to the engineering studies. Reading skills development. Basic skills in use of Microsoft Word and Excel.

*Home department:* Engineering (Admin)

## **13713 Introduction to Animal Nutrition**

### **244 (16) Introduction to animal nutrition (3L, 3P)**

Digestive systems and digestion in various domestic and wild animals. Raw material identification and application in basic feed formulation. Energy, protein, vitamin and mineral nutrition of domestic animals.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Animal Anatomy and Physiology 214 [not applicable to BAgri Agri-business Management students]*

*Home department:* Animal Sciences

## **12298 Introduction to Economics**

### **141 (12) Introduction to economics (4L, 2T)**

The focus of this module is to provide a comprehensive introduction to microeconomics in general, set against a contemporary South African background. Students will learn how to apply microeconomic principles to a wide variety of real-world situations in both their personal and professional life. Deeper understanding and working knowledge of the following basic fundamental microeconomic concepts will be provided: what economics is about; the three central economic questions; how different economies answer these questions; how the economy functions as a whole; what drives the economy.

*Home department:* Economic and Management Sciences (General)

## **13261 Introduction to Epidemiology**

### **841 (10) Introduction to epidemiology**

The content module will cover basic principles of nutritional epidemiology and types of nutritional surveys, the association between poverty and health and the social determinants of health.

*Home division:* Human Nutrition

## **14289 Introduction to Statistical Learning**

### **441 (12) Introduction to Statistical Learning (2L)**

Objectives and content: Statistical learning is a collective noun for a variety of techniques that can be used to identify, describe, and model patterns and trends in data sets. Some of these techniques are well established in traditional statistics, for example regression analysis and discriminant analysis, while others have become feasible because of the ready availability of computing power. Examples of the latter are support vector machines, neural networks and recommender systems, all of which are discussed in the module. The module strikes a balance between a study of these and other specific methods on the one hand and the underlying fundamentals on the other. Regularisation, optimisation and the curse-of-dimensionality and ways of combatting it, are important concepts that are emphasised throughout the module.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Mathematical Statistics 312*
- *Data Science 246 OR Data Science 314*

*Home department: Statistics and Actuarial Science*

## **13341 Introduction to Systems Thinking**

### **870 (6) Introduction to systems thinking**

Analysis of an existing farm and its environment by using a problem tree. The concept of a transect walk will be introduced. The issue of food security is studied as an overarching issue.

In the lectures, systems thinking and the associated terminology and concepts are introduced including system boundaries, system components, system structure, internal and external factors.

#### **Learning outcomes**

At the end of the module the student is able to:

- distinguish the main components of farming systems and rural livelihoods
- appreciate the complexity of the farming systems and their context
- explain the basic concepts of systems analysis
- describe the importance of the different disciplines for the multiple dimensions of sustainable agriculture with food security as an overarching issue
- use a problem tree to assess sustainability of a farming system

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **13350 Introduction to Transport and Logistics Systems**

### **144 (12) Introduction to transport and logistics systems (3L, 1P)**

Introduction to the unique purpose of the transport system; the components of the system; the economic significance of the transport system; the organisation and regulation of transport; concepts of demand and supply; and transport from a management perspective.

The scope of product supply chains; aspects of utility and value creation; aspects of materials management, including resource and inventory acquisition; aspects of production and operations management; aspects of physical distribution management; conforming to customer requirements with respect to product supply and delivery.

*Home department: Logistics*

## **55344 Investment Management**

### **254 (16) Introduction to investment theory (3L, 1P)**

Portfolio theory and portfolio management; the relationship between risk and return; the efficient market hypothesis; valuation and risk of fixed income securities; evaluation of share investments; properties of derivative instruments; derivative strategies; valuation of options and futures; measurement and evaluation of

portfolio returns.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Business Management 142*
- *Statistics and Data Science 188 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 114 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 144*

*Corequisite module:*

- *Business Management 113*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **314 (12) Equity analysis (2L)**

Theory of valuation; valuation models and techniques; practical implementation of valuation models; valuation variables; stock market analysis; industry analysis; company analysis and stock selection; technical analysis; equity portfolio management strategies.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Statistics and Data Science 188 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 114 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 144*

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Investment Management 254*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **324 (12) Fixed-income securities (2L)**

Features and overview of fixed income securities and sectors; yield measures and spreads; valuations; interest rate risks and returns; credit analysis; term structure and interest rate dynamics; and other selected securities.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Statistics and Data Science 188 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 114 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 144*

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Investment Management 254*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **344 (12) Derivative Instruments (2L)**

Exposure to and handling of financial risk; the risk management process; the hedging concept; the functions of the treasury and the management of negotiable value; characteristics of derived financial instruments; strategies for the use of derived financial instruments; valuation of options and futures contracts; basic arbitrage strategies with options and futures contracts; swaps and forward rate agreements; alternative investments.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Statistics and Data Science 188 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 114 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 144*

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Investment Management 254*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **349 (12) Property and Alternative Investments (2L)**

This module focuses on preparing students to make investment decisions regarding property and other alternative investments (private equity, hedge funds, commodities, etc.). In this regard, the focus falls on themes such as markets and trends; financial and investment analysis in respect of the acquisition, ownership and sale; market valuation approaches; types of investment and financing instruments.

This module also focuses on the ethical management of investment portfolios encompassed by the Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct of the CFA Institute, which includes themes such as the liability

of investment practitioners towards the profession, employers, clients, possible clients and the broad public; reporting of historical investment returns; responsible risk-taking; risk control.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Statistics and Data Science 188 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 114 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 144*

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Investment Management 254*
- *Financial Management 214 OR Financial Accounting 178 OR Financial Accounting 188*

*Home department: Business Management*

## **14219 Logistics and Supply Chain Management**

### **214 (16) Logistics and supply chain management (3L, 1P)**

*Introduction to logistics and supply chain management:* Supply chain overview, the role of logistics in the firm, the elements of logistics, integrated logistics management, organisation for effective logistics, international logistics, new trends.

*Demand management:* Balancing supply and demand, demand forecasting, sales and operations planning, collaborative planning, forecasting and replenishment.

*Order management and customer service:* Order management, customer service and relationship management.

*Supply chain technology and information flows:* Role of information and data in the supply chain, the implementation and use of software and technology in the supply chain.

*Logistics research:* literature review, how to find and read academic sources.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Business Management 113*

*Home department: Logistics*

### **244 (16) Logistics and Supply Chain Management (3L, 1P)**

*Supply management / procurement:* Impact on the firm's bottom line, progression from tactical to strategic role, cross-functional impact and process; procurement cycle, public sector procurement.

*Portfolio of relationships:* Tactical, collaborative, strategic alliance, logistics relationships, 3PL industry overview.

*Sourcing materials and services:* Managing procurement, strategic sourcing, global sourcing, outsourcing, total cost of ownership (TCO), negotiation.

*Producing goods and services:* Role of production operations in the supply chain, operations strategy and planning, decisions in production, production technology, packaging in the supply chain.

*Inventory in the supply chain:* Role of inventory in the economy and organisations, inventory costs, inventory management approaches, inventory classification.

*Logistics research:* Identifying and defining the logistics research problem.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Business Management 113*

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Logistics and Supply Chain Management 214 OR Introduction to Transport and Logistics Systems 144*

*Home department: Logistics*

### **314 (12) Logistics and Supply Chain Management (2L)**

**Transport:** Role of transportation; challenges faced in transportation; modes of transportation; transportation planning and strategy; execution and control; transportation technology; vehicle costing and fleet management.

**Distribution:** Role of distribution; distribution planning and strategy; distribution execution; distribution technology.

**Supply chain sustainability:** logistics and the environment, supply chain sustainability framework.

**Reverse logistics:** reverse logistics systems, reverse flows, closed loop supply chains, customer returns, environmental challenges and technology application to improve reverse flows.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Business Management 113*

*Please note:* You may not take any third-year Logistics and Supply Chain Management modules in combination with Financial Accounting 389.

*Home department:* Logistics

### 324 (12) Logistics and Supply Chain Management (2L)

*Supply chain network analysis and design:* Network design as a part of supply chain planning; logistics/supply chain network design; modelling approaches.

*Logistics performance measurement and financial analysis:* Performance measurement; logistics/supply chain performance metrics; benchmarking the supply chain; impact of logistics on financial performance.

*Supply chain strategy:* strategic supply chain resource requirements, supply chain strategy implementation, change management, stakeholder management, integrated metrics.

*Supply chain risk:* managing risk in supply chains and business continuity planning.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Logistics and Supply Chain Management 214 OR Logistics and Supply Chain Management 244 OR Introduction to Transport and Logistics Systems 114*

*Please note:* You may not take any third-year Logistics and Supply Chain Management modules in combination with Financial Accounting 389.

*Home department:* Logistics

### 344 (12) Logistics and Supply Chain Management (2L, 1P)

**Logistics analysis:** For both functional excellence and integrative excellence, a variety of analytical techniques and enabling technology can be employed to support decisions on the short, medium and longer timeframes. Analytical techniques (descriptive and normative) and enabling technology (transactional vs. analytical information technology) form an integral part of the support decision-makers require.

**Logistics research:** getting data (qualitative and quantitative), data preparation, formulation of hypotheses and basic statistical tests, with applications in the fields of logistics and supply chain management.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Statistics and Data Science 188 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 114 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 144*

*Please note:* You may not take any third-year Logistics and Supply Chain Management modules in combination with Financial Accounting 389.

*Home department:* Logistics

### 354 (12) Logistics and Supply Chain Management (2L)

**Logistics research:** Research design; exploratory research design for secondary data and qualitative research; surveys and observations as part of descriptive research; measurement of perceptions; questionnaire design; sampling; fieldwork.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Logistics and Supply Chain Management 314*
- *Logistics and Supply Chain Management 324*

*Please note:* You may not take any third-year Logistics and Supply Chain Management modules in combination with Financial Accounting 389.

*Home department:* Logistics

## 13262 Macro- & Micronutrients & Health

### 842 (10) Macro- & micronutrients & health

This theme focuses on providing insight into the problem of malnutrition, and evidence-based approaches to address the problem.

*Home division:* Human Nutrition

## 10812 Management Accounting

### 288 (24) Management accounting (3L)

Introduction to strategy. Time value of money; risk and return; valuation of preference shares and bonds; working capital management; financing decision and cost of capital. Fundamental concepts of cost and management accounting; cost assignment and behaviour; job costing; standard costing; process costing; joint and by-products; budgeting and control.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Financial Accounting 188 OR Financial Accounting 179 OR Prerequisite module: Financial Accounting 178*

*Home department: School of Accountancy*

## 23795 Marketing Management

### 214 (16) Marketing management (3L, 1P)

Modern marketing dynamics in enterprises and the community; marketing and the value creation process; customer satisfaction through quality and service; strategic marketing planning; analysis of the marketing environment; marketing information and research; analysis of consumer markets and other types of markets; measurement and forecasting of demand; market segmentation and target market selection; product decisions; price decisions; channel decisions and place strategy; communication decisions; direct marketing and sales promotion decisions.

*Corequisite modules:*

- *Business Management 113*
- *Financial Management 214 OR Financial Accounting 278 OR Financial Accounting 288 OR Biometry 212*

*Home department: Business Management*

### 244 (16) Integrated and digital marketing communication (3L, 1P)

Marketing communication, advertising and the marketing process; the consumer audience; marketing communication research; functioning of marketing communication; marketing communication planning and strategy in traditional and digital environments; media; media planning and buying; traditional, new and digital media; planning and execution of creative advertising aspects; integration of the elements of marketing communication.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Marketing Management 214*

*Home department: Business Management*

### 314 (12) Omnichannel retail marketing (2L)

Omnichannel approach to retail strategy and the retailing mix; location decisions; merchandise decisions; price decisions; communication decisions; consumer services and information; technology and systems; franchise agreements.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Marketing Management 214*

*Home department: Business Management*

### 324 (12) Services management (2L)

Unique characteristics of services; nature and process of service delivery; differences between product and service evaluations; development, communication and delivery of services; service quality and its measurement; the role of service providers and the environment of service delivery; implementation of service-marketing strategies.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Marketing Management 214*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **344 (12) Marketing research (2L)**

Defining of the marketing problem; research design; exploratory research design for secondary data and qualitative research; surveys and observations as part of descriptive research; measurement of perceptions; questionnaire design; sampling; fieldwork and data preparation; formulation of hypotheses and basic statistical tests.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Marketing Management 214*
- *Marketing Management 244*
- *Probability Theory and Statistics 144 OR Statistics and Data Science 188*

*Home department: Business Management*

### **354 (12) Strategic marketing (2L)**

Function and application of marketing in different organisations and conditions; enterprise and marketing strategy; competitive marketing strategies; international marketing strategies; the marketing system; consumer markets and buying behaviour; institutional markets and buying behaviour; marketing planning processes; marketing controls.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Marketing Management 214*
- *Marketing Management 244*

*Home department: Business Management*

## **21539 Mathematics**

### **114 (16) Calculus (5L, 2T)**

Any student who wishes to take this module must have achieved a mark of at least 6 (or 70%) for Mathematics in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate.

Induction and the binomial theorem. Functions, limits and continuity; derivatives and rules of differentiation; applications of differentiation; the definite and indefinite integral; integration of elementary functions.

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### **144 (16) Calculus and linear algebra (5L, 2T)**

Complex numbers; transcendental functions; techniques of integration; improper integrals; conic sections; polar co-ordinates; partial derivatives; introduction to matrices and determinants.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Mathematics 114*

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### **186 (32) Introductory mathematics (3L, 3T)**

For BSc (extended curriculum programme) and BEng (extended curriculum programme) students.

Any student who wishes to take this module must have achieved a mark of at least 5 (or 60%) for Mathematics in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate.

An introduction to calculus, linear algebra and mathematical reasoning: Different presentations of functions in terms of formulas, graphs, tables and stories; inverse of a function; exponential and logarithmic functions; trigonometric functions and their inverse functions; modelling with functions. Gradual progression from average to instantaneous rate of change; limits; basic integration. Systems of equations; analytic geometry; mathematical induction; binomial theorem.

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### **214 (16) Advanced calculus and linear algebra (4L, 2T)**

Advanced Calculus: Functions of more than one real variable, multiple integrals, line integrals, surface integrals, the divergence theorem.

Linear algebra: Vectors in  $n$  dimensions: linear transformations of real vector spaces and their matrices; geometric transformations: rotation, reflection, dilation, projection; composition of transformations. General



real vector spaces: subspaces, linear independence, basis, dimension; rank and nullity of a matrix. General inner-product matrices; orthogonality, orthonormal bases, projections, the Gram-Schmidt process; QR factorisation of a matrix; least squares approximations; orthogonal matrices.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Mathematics 114*
- *Mathematics 144*

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

## **244 (16) Analysis and linear algebra (4L, 2T)**

Analysis: Improper integrals, sequences and series, power series and Taylor's theorem, second-order linear differential equations.

Linear algebra: Eigenvalues and eigenvectors, diagonalisation of a real matrix; orthogonal diagonalisation; linear transformations of general real vector spaces; matrix representation of linear transformations between general finite dimensional vector spaces; change of basis; systems of first-order differential equations and other applications.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Mathematics 214*

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

## **21547 Mathematics (Bio)**

### **124 (16) Mathematics for the biological sciences (4L, 2T)**

Functions and their inverses: polynomial functions, rational functions, power functions, exponential functions, trigonometric functions. Solution of trigonometric equations. Composition of functions. Limits. Definition of the derivative of a function. Continuity. Rules of differentiation, certain formulae. Higher-order derivatives. Implicit differentiation. Applications of differentiation: processes of growth and decay, graph sketching, optimisation problems. Indefinite integrals. Techniques of integration: substitution, integration by parts. The definite integral as the limit of a sum. The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus. Definite integrals as areas. Solution and use of simple differential equations.

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

### **176 (32) Introductory mathematics for the biological sciences (3L, 3P)**

For students in the BSc (extended curriculum programmes).

Any student who wishes to take this module must have achieved a mark of at least 4 (or 50%) for Mathematics in the NSC or the IEB's school-leaving certificate.

Different presentations of functions in terms of formulas, graphs, tables and stories; inverse of a function; exponential and logarithmic functions; trigonometric functions and their inverse functions; modelling with functions; gradual progression from average to instantaneous rate of change; limits. Simple two-dimensional Euclidean geometry, as applied to polygons and circles; co-ordinate geometry; linear programming; optimising a function in two variables subject to linear constraints; introduction to data handling and probability.

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences*

## **11580 Mathematics for EMS**

### **171 (18) Mathematics for EMS (3L, 2T)**

The focus of this module is to provide a foundation and promote deeper understanding and working knowledge of the following basic fundamental Mathematics concepts: pre-calculus review; straight lines, linear functions and linear programming with an emphasis on shadow prices and sensitivity analysis; financial mathematics that extensively covers simple interest, compound interest involving time-lines, interest-discount rate conversions and annuities; sets and counting techniques; probability; functions, limits and the derivative; differentiation; applications of the derivative with an emphasis on the optimisation of cost, revenue and profit functions; antiderivatives (integrals) of power functions only in relation to areas under curves.

*Home department: Economic and Management Sciences (General)*

## **22853 Mathematical Statistics**

### **214 (16) Distribution theory and Introduction to statistical inference (4L, 2P)**

Continuous stochastic variables; expected value and variance of a continuous stochastic variable; important continuous distributions; uniform, normal, exponential, gamma, beta. Moments and moment-generating



functions for discrete and continuous distributions. Bivariate probability distributions; marginal and conditional distributions; the multinomial and bivariate normal distribution; determining the distribution of functions of variables. The central limit theorem (without proof). Samples and sampling distributions: the standard parametric cases. Interval estimation and hypothesis testing: applying these principles in the standard cases of parametric inference. Data representation and description, calculating and interpreting sample measures.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Probability Theory and Statistics 114 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 144*
- *(Both Mathematics 114 AND Mathematics 144) (with an average final mark of at least 60% for Mathematics 114 and Mathematics 144 together) OR Mathematics 214 with a final mark of at least 55% If you have passed Engineering Mathematics 115 and Engineering Mathematics 145 with an average mark of at least 60% for the two together, or Engineering Mathematics 214 with a final mark of at least 55% you are exempt from this.*

*Home department: Statistics and Actuarial Science*

## **245 (8) Statistical inference (2L, 1P)**

Introduction to statistical inference. Principles of point estimation: efficiency, minimum variance unbiased estimators, consistency. Method of moments estimators. Maximum likelihood estimators. The Neyman-Pearson lemma: proof and applications. Likelihood ratio tests. Parametric estimation theory and hypothesis testing. Bayesian inferential statistics.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Mathematical Statistics 214*

*Home department: Statistics and Actuarial Science*

## **246 (8) Linear models in statistics (2L, 1P)**

Advanced matrix algebra. Stochastic vectors and matrices. The multivariate normal distribution. Maximum likelihood estimation of parameters in the multivariate normal distribution. Distributions of quadratic forms. The simple linear regression model. The method of least squares. Inference in the simple linear regression model. Introduction to R software.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Mathematical Statistics 214*

*Home department: Statistics and Actuarial Science*

## **312 (16) Statistical inference and probability theory (3L, 1P)**

Advanced distribution theory, sequences of random variables, limit theory for sequences, generating functions, sampling distributions and approximations. Sufficiency. Different approaches to inference. Goodness-of-fit methods. Bayes inference: Decision theory and Bayes risk using loss functions, Bayesian belief networks and Bayesian classification. Markov Chain Monte Carlo simulation techniques: Gibbs sampling and Metropolis-Hasting algorithms.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Mathematical Statistics 245*

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Mathematical Statistics 246 with a final mark of at least 40%*
- *Mathematics 214 OR Engineering Mathematics 214*

*Home department: Statistics and Actuarial Science*

# **16284 Microbiology**

## **214 (16) Introductory microbiology (3L, 3P)**

History, microscopy, classification, structure and function (bacteria and archaea), nutritional requirements and growth factors, nutrient uptake, energy generation, culture media, growth curves, continuous culture, physical and chemical control, environmental factors, biofilm formation, quorum sensing and antimicrobial therapy.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Biology 124 OR Biology 144*
- *Chemistry 124 OR Chemistry 164*
- *Chemistry 144*

*Home department: Microbiology*

## **244 (16) Microbial diversity (3L, 3P)**

Kingdoms of life, and modern microbial taxonomy and introductory microbial genomics. Prokaryotes, archaeal cell structure and function, non-proteobacterial Gram-negative bacteria, Proteobacterial classes, Firmicutes and Actinobacteria. Fungal groups, cell structure and function. Structure of viruses and virus taxonomy and multiplication strategies. Microbiology of water and soil environments, different metabolic types of micro-organisms, the role of different microbial taxa in biogeochemical cycles and energy flow in the food web, the dependence of animals and plants on micro-organisms, including symbiotic associations, microbe-plant associations and microbe-insect associations, interactions between micro-organisms.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Biology 124 OR Biology 144*
- *Chemistry 124 OR Chemistry 164*
- *Chemistry 144*

*Home department: Microbiology*

## **43850 Nematology**

### **344 (16) Introduction to nematology (1L, 3P)**

An introduction to the scientific field of nematology, which include plant parasitic and insect parasitic nematodes. The emphasis is on the morphological characteristics of diagnostic value, as it forms the basis of the taxonomic classification system used for nematodes. The general reproduction and biology of nematodes are discussed. Control of plant parasitic nematodes and the control of insects with the use of entomopathogenic nematodes are covered. The focus is on the biology, identification and control of plant parasitic genera of economic importance to agriculture. The lectures are combined with practical sessions in which extraction techniques, symptomatology and live specimens of nematodes are studied using stereo and light microscopy.

*The following modules may not be taken concurrently with this one: Plant Pathology 314, 344*

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

## **59528 Operations Research (Eng)**

### **345 (15) Operations research (deterministic models) (3L, 3T)**

The systems approach to problem-solving; problems leading to linear programming, network, integer and non-linear programming models; algorithms for solving such models; tasks, including exercises with computer packages.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Engineering Mathematics 214*

*Home department: Industrial Engineering*

### **415 (15) Operations research (stochastic models) (3L, 3T)**

Analysis of problems leading to a selection of deterministic and stochastic dynamic programming models; Markov chains and waiting-line models; techniques for solving such models; decisions under uncertainty; Bayes' theorem; multi-criteria decision-making; local-search- and population-based metaheuristics.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Engineering Statistics 314 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 114*

*Home department: Industrial Engineering*

## **13005 Physics (Bio)**

### **134 (16) Introductory physics for biological sciences A (3L, 3P)**

Selected topics, relevant to the biological sciences, from introductory mechanics, hydro-statics and optics.

*Corequisite modules:*

- *Mathematics (Bio) 124 OR Mathematics 114*

*Home department: Physics*

## **154 (16) Introductory physics for biological sciences B (3L, 3P)**

Selected topics, relevant to the biological sciences, from introductory electricity, magnetism, thermodynamics, gas laws, atomic physics, radioactivity, oscillations and waves.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Physics (Bio) 134*

*Home department: Physics*

## **12998 Physics**

### **176 (32) Preparatory physics (3L, 3P)**

Students follow this module in the BSc extended curriculum programmes in AgriSciences and Science and for the BEng. The module focuses on the nature of physics with the following themes as content: Mechanics, electromagnetism, modern physics.

*Home department: Physics*

## **13328 Physiological and Ecological Principles of Natural Pasture Management**

### **712 (18) Physiological and ecological principles of natural pasture management (3L, 3P)**

Development and ecology of South African veld types; morphology and physiology of pasture plants; physiology of defoliation and plant response to it; physiological principles of veld management; determination of veld condition; veld burning; bush encroachment; veld management on game farms; causes and control of erosion.

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **13537 Plant Genetics and Crop Improvement**

### **422 (8) Plant genetics and crop improvement (3L, 3P)**

Plant breeding objectives; reproduction in plants; cell and tissue culture; breeding strategies for self- and cross-pollinating crops; the utilisation of hybrid vigour; mutation breeding; breeding for insect and disease resistance; variations in chromosome number and its exploitation in breeding programmes; plant breeders' rights.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Genetics 324*
- *Genetics 354*

*Home department: Genetics*

### **722 (8) Plant genetics and crop improvement**

Plant-breeding objectives; reproduction in plants; cell and tissue culture; breeding strategies for self- and cross-pollinating crops; the utilisation of hybrid vigour; mutation breeding; breeding for insect and disease resistance; variations in chromosome number and its exploitation in breeding programmes; plant breeders' rights.

*Home department: Genetics*

## **32891 Plant Pathology**

### **314 (16) Plant disease management (3L, 3P)**

The underlying principles and methods used for plant disease control from pre-planting to postharvest. This includes the role of plant quarantine, disease certification and cultivation practices on disease development, and on the epidemiological considerations for plant disease forecasting and disease assessment. Emphasis is placed on plant disease resistance, and chemical and biological control, either as primary control strategies or as components of an integrated disease control programme, to ensure efficient and sustainable protection against a diverse range of pathogens.

*Home department: Plant Pathology*

### **344 (16) Plant disease dynamics (3L, 3P)**

Components of plant diseases, such as the plant pathogens that cause them, the host factors that influence their development, and the environmental conditions that favour them. Diseases of national and international importance and the damage they have caused to food production in the world. The dynamics of pathogens associated with seed and nursery plants, as well as those causing soil-borne, foliar and fruit diseases before harvest, and decay and damage after harvest.

*Home department: Plant Pathology*

### **414 (16) Taxonomy and biology of plant pathogens (3L, 3P)**

Morphology, taxonomy and biology of plant pathogenic fungi, oomycetes, bacteria, mollicutes (spiroplasmas and phytoplasmas) and viruses. Practicals include microscopic cultural morphology and physiological and biochemical methods used to identify the major groups of plant pathogenic fungi, oomycetes and bacteria.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Plant Pathology 314*
- *Plant Pathology 344*

*Home department: Plant Pathology*

### **444 (16) Plant-microbe interactions (3L, 3P)**

The dynamic interaction between plants and micro-organisms, both detrimental and beneficial. Aspects related to fungal diversity, genetics and genomics, and the role of microbial pathogenicity factors and secondary metabolites in plant disease development. The plant's defence mechanisms and ability to recognise and respond to pathogen attack. Enhancement of disease resistance in plants against pathogens, and the development of novel disease control strategies. Methods used for gene discovery and functional gene analyses in plants and pathogens, and concepts such as transformation and gene manipulation.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Plant Pathology 314*
- *Plant Pathology 344*

*Home department: Plant Pathology*

### **474 (16) Advanced plant pathology (2L, 0.5T)**

Topical issues in plant pathology, including new approaches for the management of plant diseases. Emphasis is placed on postharvest and soilborne diseases, and the use of pesticide spray technology for improving plant disease control of foliar and fruit disease in an environmentally safe manner. Aspects related to the sustainable production of plant-based foods, including phytosanitary issues, pesticide residues and microbial contaminants of plant-based food crops. Visits to key agricultural industries in order to obtain a practical understanding of the role of plant pathology in agriculture. Attendance of postgraduate research seminars.

*Home department: Plant Pathology*

### **771 (16) Advanced disease management**

The importance of epidemiology in control and management of plant diseases through the integration of cultivation practices, physical, biological and chemical strategies (seed technology, minimum manipulation, plant quarantine, sanitation practices and resistance). The mode of action of fungicides and the management of fungicide resistance in fungal populations. Biological control. Development and production of biocontrol systems for soil-borne, plant and fruit pathogens.

*Home department: Plant Pathology*

### **772 (16) Advanced plant disease dynamics**

Components of plant diseases, such as the plant pathogens that cause them, the host factors that influence their development and the environmental conditions that favour them. Diseases of national and international importance and the damage they cause to food production in the world. The dynamics of pathogens associated with seed and nursery plants, as well as those causing soil-borne, foliar and fruit diseases before harvest, and decay and damage after harvest.

*Home department: Plant Pathology*

### **773 (10) Research methodology**

Relevant and current experimental approaches and methods of analysis used in plant pathology. Experimental design and statistical analysis, molecular methods, phylogenetic analysis, paper reviews.

*Home department: Plant Pathology*

## **774 (60) Project management and presentation**

Course work will include lessons in project identification, planning and execution, writing of research proposals and reports, presentation of research findings, scientific collaboration and ethics in science. Exercises in project planning and execution will be conducted under supervision. A literature study and scientific findings will be presented as scientific manuscripts and as an oral presentation.

*Home department: Plant Pathology*

## **775 (18) Advanced topics in plant pathology**

Topical issues in plant pathology will be discussed in this module. These include aspects such as climate change, food security and genetic modification. Students are expected to prepare properly for these discussions by doing internet searches and reading research papers and books on the individual topics. The topic will be introduced by an expert, after which a class discussion will follow. Students will be expected to prepare a one-page document of their views on the topic and list the literature sources that they have accessed.

*Home department: Plant Pathology*

## **32891 Plant Physiology**

### **712 (8) Plant physiology**

Plants are sessile and therefore they must be efficient in taking up mineral elements from the soil, and then using them to grow and reproduce. This requires the expenditure of energy and the utilisation of metabolites resulting in tight integration between carbon and nutritional metabolism. The first part of the module deals with plant nutrition and water uptake and their relation to crop productivity, whereas the second part deals with hormonal and signalling aspects of plant growth and development.

*Home department: Genetics*

## **13342 Plant Production and Plant Protection**

### **872 (8) Plant production and plant protection**

This module focuses on integrated crop management and integrated pest management (IPM) within farming systems. It covers the complex relationships between soil, plants, microbes, growing practices and nutrient kinetics. This module provides knowledge and tools to understand the interactions between the biotic and abiotic factors in agrosystems in order to facilitate agricultural demands.

The module uses a systems approach to integrate disciplinary knowledge of plant production at various integration levels (plant, crop, farm) taking farming externalities, such as effluent and off-farm nutrients, into account. Attention will be paid to conservation agriculture including aspects such as no- and minimum till, rotational and intercropping, precision agriculture, cover crops, green manuring and alternative crops.

#### **Learning outcomes**

At the end of this module the student is expected to be able to describe the agro-ecological determinants of cropping systems:

- use a systems approach to farms using basic knowledge of plant production
- recognise the influence of diverse farming methods on natural resources and on the environment
- explain insect and pathogen ecology as related to integrated pest management in diverse agricultural systems
- evaluate the dynamics of biological control of pests and diseases
- explain the processes related to the influence of climate change on crop production and crop protection.

*Home department: Agronomy*

## **56820 Probability Theory and Statistics**

### **114 (16) Probability theory and statistics (3L, 3T)**

Combinatorial analysis; the basic counting principles; permutations and combinations. Random phenomena; sample spaces and events; the probability axioms; the probability of an event; random selection; probability rules; conditional probability; the rule of Bayes; stochastic independence. Discrete and continuous stochastic

variables; expected value and variance of stochastic variables; important discrete distributions: binomial, Poisson, geometric, hypergeometric, negative binomial; important continuous distributions, uniform, normal.

**Please note:** This module is identical to Probability Theory and Statistics 144(16), which is offered in the second semester by the Department of Statistics and Actuarial Science for BCom students.

*Home department: Mathematical Sciences, Division Applied Mathematics*

## **23256 Production Management**

### **212 (8) Production and operational management (2L, 2T)**

Introduction to operations management; strategy and sustainability; process analysis and manufacturing processes; lean supply chains; sales and operations planning; materials requirements planning (dependent inventory).

*Home department: Industrial Engineering*

### **314 (15) Operations facilities and management (3L; 1P; 2T)**

Process analysis and improvement by combining Lean and Theory of Constraints approaches; facility design with regard to facility location, facility layout and production line design; demand forecasting and capacity planning; integrated production planning from an aggregate to operational level; inventory planning and control; scheduling, execution and control of production.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Production Management 212*

*Corequisite module:*

- *Engineering Statistics 314*

*Home department: Industrial Engineering*

## **46167 Quality Assurance**

### **344 (15) Quality assurance (2L, 3T)**

Definition of quality, methods and techniques of quality assurance, statistical process design, sampling. Principles of robust design. Formulation of measures of system performance and quality. Identification of quality noise factors. Formulation and implementation of techniques to reduce effects of noise. Synthesis and selection of design concepts for robustness.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Engineering Statistics 314*

*Home department: Industrial Engineering*

## **59471 Quality Management**

### **444 (15) Quality management (3L, 3T)**

Definition of reliability and maintainability; reliability management; methods and techniques for reliability modelling, data analysis, prediction and maintainability assurance; quality management; methods and techniques for quality management; quality improvement; quality planning; quality control; leadership for quality management; cost of (poor) quality.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Engineering Statistics 314*

*Home department: Industrial Engineering*

## **13347 Quantitative Analysis of Land Use Systems**

### **881 (8) Quantitative analysis of land use systems (QUALUS)**

The module deals with qualitative land evaluation and presents an overview of quantitative methods for regional land use analysis and design. The methods identify options for sustainable systems and land use and provide trade-offs among objectives. Disciplinary knowledge about economics, soil, water, climate, animals and plants is integrated at different levels. Important aspects of the various methods treated are their aim, spatial and temporal scale under different climate regimes and the use of biological information systems. The

module will be illustrated primarily with a case study on fynbos, but other cases will also be used.

### Learning outcomes

At the end of the module the student is expected to be able to:

- give an overview of the qualitative and quantitative methods for (sustainable) regional land use analysis;
- give an overview and explain the role of models within land use design and planning;
- explain competing claims between various types of land use, such as agriculture and nature conservation;
- carry out a qualitative evaluation of sustainable land use using QUALUS;
- understand the influence of temporal and spatial scales on the methodology and the results of land use analysis;
- carry out data collection (mainly literature) on different aspects of sustainable land use.

*Home department: Agricultural Economics*

## **13533 / 13534 / 13535 Research Assignment**

### **841 / 842 / 843 (60) Research assignment**

Includes the planning and implementation of a research project. The research assignment will be submitted in the format of a scientific report/publication.

*Home division: Food Science/Agricultural Economics/Human Nutrition*

## **12582 Research in Plant Biotechnology**

### **790 (64) Research module in plant biotechnology**

An approved research project is compulsory. This component consists of the research project, a research proposal, research seminars, a poster, a popular article and an oral. The results are submitted in the form of a scientific paper and presented at a seminar to a scientific audience.

*Home department: Genetics*

## **13349 Research Thesis (Sustainable Agriculture)**

### **883 (90) Research thesis**

Conduct a literature review on selected research topics, drawing up a research proposal, performing experiments, collection, processing and interpretation of data, writing a research report. Regular feedback on the above via oral presentations.

### Learning outcomes

At the end of the module the student is expected to be able to:

- prepare a research proposal
- conduct a literature review on selected research topics
- perform experiments according to statistical designs
- collect relevant data
- process and interpret data
- write a research report
- provide feedback on the above via oral presentations to peers, academic staff and relevant industry partners.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **13538 Scientific and Proposal Writing**

### **721 (8) Scientific and proposal writing**

This module is aimed at introducing genetics and biotechnology students to the non-biological aspects of scientific research, such as the development of a funding proposal and the art of scientific writing. Students will also be introduced to concepts such as the generation and development of creative ideas, entrepreneurship, market research, feasibility studies, the generation of a business plan, financing,



profitability, good laboratory practice, quality control and project management in a research environment.

*Home department: Genetics*

## **64866 Scientific Communication Skills**

### **116 (12) Scientific communication skills (3L, 3T)**

For students in the BSc extended curriculum programmes. This module focuses on the development of speaking, listening and reading skills in the academic environment in general and specifically in the natural sciences. Aspects such as engaging with and understanding relevant academic and natural science texts, understanding text components, the use of fluent, correct and proper language and the interpretation of graphic data will be addressed.

*Home department: SU Language Centre*

### **146 (6) Scientific communication skills (3L)**

For BSc students in the BSc extended curriculum programmes. This module focuses on the development of writing skills in the academic environment in general and specifically in the natural sciences. Aspects such as engaging with and understanding relevant academic and natural science texts, understanding text components, presenting data in an edited and coherent text, the use of correct and proper language, the employment of accurate language, correct referencing techniques and using graphics to clarify data will be addressed.

*Home department: SU Language Centre*

## **19003 Sociology**

### **333 (12) Environmental sociology (2L, 0.5T)**

An introduction to the field of environmental sociology; sociological approaches to contemporary environmental issues and problems, particularly as they pertain to South Africa and the Global South.

*Home department: Sociology and Social Anthropology*

## **13344 Sociology of Sustainable Agriculture**

### **875 (6) Sociology of sustainable agriculture**

An introduction to sociological perspectives on social relationships (including gender), sustainability, land and the environment. Topics covered include the sociological imagination; introduction to the sociology of the environment; sociological debates on sustainability, development, and livelihoods; social stratification, gender and diversity; sociological perspectives on land and conservation issues in South African society and participatory research methodologies.

#### **Learning outcomes**

At the end of the module the student is expected to be able to:

- appreciate the value of 'the sociological imagination' for understanding human action and social relationships in agricultural contexts
- explain key sociological concepts, e.g. social structure, human agency, modernisation, power, social stratification, gender, social identity
- join key sociological debates on sustainability, livelihoods and the sociology of the environment
- describe the social dynamics in the South African countryside, including in relation to land and conservation
- be able to apply the concepts and principles of social analysis presented in this module to the broader social context in which sustainable agriculture is defined and practised
- apply participatory research methodologies useful for research and practice in the management of natural and agricultural resources.

*Home department: Conservation Ecology and Entomology*

## **14176 Soil Science**

### **114 (16) Principles of soil science (3L, 1.5P)**

An elementary overview on the origin and distribution of soils. Discussion of the most important physical, chemical and morphological characteristics of soil. Soil water. Soil organic matter. Soil organisms. Chemical



and mineralogical characteristics of soil. Soil pH. Classification and development of South African soils. Land and soil suitability.

*Home department: Soil Science*

### **142 (8) Applications of soil science (1.5L, 1.5P)**

Principles of plant nutrition and fertilisation; ground water and irrigation; salinity and drainage; soil management.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Soil Science 114*

*Home department: Soil Science*

### **214 (16) Introduction to soil science (3L, 3P)**

Soil as a three-dimensional unit; soil formation factors: climate, parent material, relief, organisms and time; weathering processes and products; physical properties of soil: texture, structure, colour, air-water-temperature relationships; chemical properties of soil: soil colloids, clay minerals, cation adsorption and exchange, soil reaction; formation and properties of soil organic material; elementary interpretation and evaluation of physical, chemical and morphological soil characteristics for resource use.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Chemistry 144*

*Home department: Soil Science*

### **222 (16) Soil biology and ecology (3L, 3P)**

Soil biodiversity contributes to soil health through important soil processes such as nutrient cycling, carbon cycling, improvement of soil structure through soil aggregation, protection of plants against stress and pathogens, among others. Therefore, soil biodiversity is directly or indirectly linked to most sustainable development goals such as food production, water quality, climate action and air quality. Soil biota can also be used as indicators of soil and environment quality which is insightful in management of food production systems and conservation of environments. Therefore, this module is designed to: i) explain the different organisms that live in the soil in terms their size, distribution, and taxonomy ii) discuss the methods used to study, analyse, and interpret data of soil organisms and iii) explain how different organisms interact in nutrients and energy acquisition and transfer in different trophic levels. Students will apply the knowledge and skills gained to analyse, interpret, and link soil biota data to environmental functions and services, and iv) explain the threats to soil biodiversity.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Biology 124*

*Home department: Soil Science*

### **244 (16) Plant nutrition and fertilisation (3L, 3P)**

Composition and nutrition of plants; individual plant nutrient elements; equilibria in the soil; organic and mineral fertilisers: their characteristics and uses; determination of fertiliser requirements and fertiliser application in practice; interaction with rhizosphere and pedosphere organisms; management of fertilizers to protect the environment.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Chemistry 124*
- *Chemistry 144*
- *Soil Science 214*

*Home department: Soil Science*

### **314 (16) Genesis, morphology, classification and uses of soil (3L, 3P)**

Development and classification of South African soils; terrain classification; soil and land mapping; methodology of soil and land suitability evaluation with special reference to crop suitability; Soil limitations in relation to plant production; Soil genesis and its relation to soil morphology.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Chemistry 124*
- *Chemistry 144*
- *Soil Science 214*

*Home department: Soil Science*

### **344 (16) Soil and water management (3L, 3P)**

Soil as storage medium for plant water; atmospheric energy balance: evaporation, transpiration and plant water requirements; soil water uptake and water loss in the soil-plant-atmosphere continuum; hydrological cycle and water resources in South Africa; methods of irrigation and irrigation scheduling; irrigation with saline water and salt balance in the soil; irrigation backflow; principles of drainage; soil surface management; erosion and control thereof and soil surface management.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Mathematics (Bio) 124 OR (Both Mathematics 114 and Mathematics 144)*
- *Soil Science 214*
- *Soil Science 244*
- *Soil Science 314*

*Home department: Soil Science*

### **414 (16) Advanced soil physics (3L, 3P)**

General physical properties: texture, particle size distribution and specific surface area. Structure and aggregation. Soil aeration. Soil temperature. Soil compaction and strength. Characteristics of water in porous media. Soil water content and potential. Soil water flow in saturated and unsaturated soil. Movement of dissolved salts and other inorganic compounds in soil. Miscible transfer. Biophysical soil quality. Laboratory and practical fieldwork.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Chemistry 214 OR Soil Science 222*
- *Soil Science 214*
- *Soil Science 244*
- *Soil Science 314*
- *Soil Science 344*

*Home department: Soil Science*

### **424 (16) Advanced soil chemistry (3L, 3P)**

Structure and reactivity of soil mineral colloids and organic matter; surface interfacial reactions between soil colloids and chemical species such as heavy metals or organic molecules; chemical equilibria in soils: mineral dissolution and precipitation, exchange, adsorption, redox and acid-base reactions; chemistry of acid, alkaline, and water-logged soils, soil biogeochemical processes. Laboratory and practical fieldwork.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Chemistry 214 OR Soil Science 222*
- *Soil Science 214*
- *Soil Science 244*
- *Soil Science 314*
- *Soil Science 344*

*Home department: Soil Science*

### **444 (16) Advanced pedology (3L, 3P)**

International soil classification systems, soil geomorphology and landscape evolution in South Africa, modern soil mapping technologies, soil morphology interpretation and soil quality.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Chemistry 214 OR Soil Science 222*
- *Soil Science 214*
- *Soil Science 244*
- *Soil Science 314*
- *Soil Science 344*

*Home department: Soil Science*

## **19658 Statistics**

### **214 (16) Applied statistics (3L, 2T)**

*Descriptive statistics:* Various data types; frequency distributions; contingency tables; graphical representation of data types; measures of location and spread; box- and whisker plot.

*Discrete stochastic variables and probability distributions:* Expected value, variance and standard deviation of a discrete stochastic variable; correlation between discrete stochastic variables; joint, marginal and conditional distributions; distribution of the sum of variables; binomial and Poisson distributions.

*Continuous stochastic variables and probability distributions:* Expected value, variance and standard deviation of a continuous stochastic variable.

*Distributions:* Uniform, normal, exponential, gamma, t, F, chi square and beta.

*Sampling distributions:* The central limit theorem; sampling distributions of one mean; one proportion and one variance; sampling distributions of the difference between two means and the difference between two proportions; sampling distributions of the ratio of two variances.

*Inferential statistics:* Interval estimation and hypothesis testing for one mean, one proportion and one variance; interval estimation and hypothesis testing for the difference between two means, the difference between two proportions and the ratio of two variances; concept of and calculation of p-values in above cases; determining sample sizes; calculation of power and the effect of sample size on it.

*Categorical data analysis:* Hypothesis testing for the difference between two or more proportions; tests for independence; the goodness-of-fit test.

*Note:* Application of statistical *techniques* using Microsoft® Excel is emphasised throughout.

*Prerequisite pass modules:*

- *Statistics and Data Science 188 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 114 OR Probability Theory and Statistics 144*

*Corequisite module:*

- *Statistics 224*  
*If you have passed Mathematics 114 or Mathematics 144 or Engineering Mathematics 115 or Engineering Mathematics 145 you, are exempt from this.*

*Home department:* Statistics and Actuarial Science

## **244 (16) Statistical inference (3L, 2T)**

*Sampling techniques:* Simple random sampling; stratified sampling; systematic sampling; cluster sampling; probability proportional to size sampling.

*Properties of estimators:* Unbiasedness; efficiency; consistency; sufficiency; robustness.

*Estimation methods:* Maximum likelihood and optimisation of linear models.

*Simple linear regression analysis:* The simple linear regression model; method of least squares estimation; inference on the model parameters and the correlation coefficient; residual analysis; prediction intervals and confidence intervals.

*Multiple linear regression analysis:* The multiple linear regression model; residual analysis; inference on the parameters of the model; regression models with dummy variables and interaction terms; polynomial regression; transformations; collinearity; variable selection.

*Linear models for classification:* Methods of estimation; inference on the model parameters; evaluation of model performance; prediction intervals and confidence intervals.

*Analysis of variance:* One- and two-factor ANOVA; multiple comparisons testing.

*Non-parametric techniques for analysis of variance:* Wilcoxon's rank sum test; the sign test; Wilcoxon's signed-rank test; Kruskal-Wallis test; Friedman's test.

*Note:* Application of statistical *techniques* using Microsoft® Excel and R is emphasised throughout.

*Prerequisite pass module:*

- *Statistics 214*

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Statistics 224*

*Home department:* Statistics and Actuarial Science

## **59587 Strategic Management**

### **344 (12) Strategic management (1.5L, 0.5P)**

Strategic management challenges in complex environments; business models and strategy; strategic environmental analysis; strategic resources and capability analyses; strategic leadership; strategy develop-

ment; knowledge, innovation and complexity management; strategy implementation; performance measurement and change management.

*Corequisite module:*

- *Business Management 113 (not applicable for students in Forest Science)*

*Home department Business Management*

## **19712 Strength of Materials**

### **143 (12) Introduction: mechanics of deformable bodies (3L, 2T)**

Introduction to mechanics, internal forces and stresses, deformations and strain, material response: material law, axially loaded elements, torsion elements with circular cross section, symmetrical bending of beams, thin-walled pressure vessels.

*Corequisite modules:*

- *Engineering Mathematics 115*
- *Applied Mathematics B 124*

*Home department: Civil Engineering*

## **14912 Sustainability Transitions**

### **478 (16) Introduction to sustainability transitions**

This module provides an introduction to the urgent and rising interest in supporting transitions to just and sustainable futures, with an emphasis on perspectives from the Global South. This module introduces students to the key trends and drivers underlying the sustainability polycrisis. Building on this foundation, the module emphasises the complex, interconnected nature of social, ecological and economic sustainability challenges, and the need for deep, systemic transformations. Attention is paid to unpacking the main paradigms and frameworks for understanding systemic transformations to sustainability and the role of futures-methods tools for exploring pathways to more sustainable futures. These strategies are highlighted with a focus on case studies of transitions and transformations in different sectors. Throughout the module, students will engage in learning activities where they will learn about and apply different systemic futures tools to explore the consequences of scaling up some promising, but not-yet-mainstream sustainability initiatives, to critically engage with some of the complexities and opportunities of navigating to a sustainable and just future. The module explicitly aims to cultivate a deepened sense of agency amongst students to engage in supporting sustainability transitions through a better understanding of the complex processes underlying transformative change and inspiring examples across diverse contexts.

*Home department: Centre for Sustainability Transitions*

## **13343 Sustainable Animal Production**

### **873 (8) Sustainable animal production (including global change, LCA)**

This module will focus on livestock production both as an activity on its own, and as an integral part of a mixed system, together with crop production. Emphasis will be on cattle, pigs, small ruminants, poultry and wildlife. Topics to be taught in this module will be advanced principles of nutrition, breeding and genetics, physiology and how they relate to sustainable animal production, the environmental impact of different rangeland production systems, perception of welfare of the animals in view of markets and social acceptance.

Furthermore, the module addresses various approaches that can be used to analyse problems with respect to sustainable development of livestock-related production. Students will learn how to tackle problems related to ecological, societal and economic sustainability. The course will also include a sustainability assessment of innovations in farming systems.

#### **Learning outcomes**

At the end of the module the student is expected to be able to:

- explain advanced principles of animal production and how they relate to intensive and extensive animal production systems (small and large scale) in different biomes
- calculate environmental indicators of animal production systems and their innovations
- explain the potential use of environmental indicators from a farm and life cycle perspective
- make a stakeholder analysis by making use of a power analysis
- interview farmers and other stakeholders to obtain data on e.g. social sustainability issues such as animal welfare, power relations and gender and analyse it statistically
- evaluate the sustainability of innovations in farming systems using a round table discussion and a

decision matrix.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **13340 Sustainable Soil Management**

### **871 (8) Sustainable soil management**

This module covers Integrated Soil Fertility Management (ISFM) within crop production systems. As part of crop and soil fertility management, a systems approach is taken that analyses yield efficiencies, integrating disciplinary knowledge of crop production at various levels (plant, crop, farm). Insight is gained into agro-ecological determinants of soil that would influence cropping systems. The module addresses various methods/approaches that can be used to analyse problems with respect to sustainable development of crop related production. The macro- and micro-organisms present in soils will be covered with specific reference to organisms that are pests or pathogens. Indicators of system performance are assessed and related to certification opportunities of sustainable agriculture.

#### **Learning outcomes**

At the end of this module the student is expected to be able to:

- explain production and ecological principles of crop production
- recognise and understand the importance of soil characteristics for crop production and select relevant nutrient and soil management solutions
- appreciate the complexity in the relationship between soil, including soil organisms, plant and cultivation practices
- interpret long-term carbon and nutrient balances of cropping systems
- evaluate cropping systems with respect to sustainability indices (e.g. soil quality, water and nutrient productivity, input-output ratios, biodiversity, landscape).

*Home department: Soil Science*

## **13346 Systems Analysis and Simulation**

### **880 (6) Systems analysis and simulation**

This module introduces the student to complex agro-ecosystems. It will address system dynamics and simulation of simple systems in practical work. Model development, evaluation and exploration of management options will be illustrated by case studies. Specifically, systems approaches will be applied to crop sciences, soil sciences and animal sciences to evaluate options for improved management.

#### **Learning outcomes**

At the end of the module the student is expected to be able to:

- apply elementary concepts such as feedback, time coefficient, relational diagram, analysis of units and numerical integration methods, following the conventions of the systems analysis approach
- analyse systems in terms of states, rates and driving variables
- discuss the outcome of basic simulation models
- explain how systems approaches can be applied in crop science, soil science and animal science and what their usefulness is for evaluating options for improved systems management
- write simple simulation models.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

## **38784 Theory of Interest**

### **142 (6) Theory of interest (2L) (hybrid module)**

Interest plays a critical role in most of today's financial transactions. Understanding how to work with interest is critical when working with credit cards, home loans, car purchases, saving for retirement or investing on the stock exchange.

In this module the principles of how to work and to do calculations with interest in its various forms (simple or compound interest, interest paid in advance, paid in arrears, or compounded continuously) are explained. Examples of working with interest when calculating the future value of an investment, the amount to invest today if a specific value is needed in the future, the monthly repayment amount of a car or home loan or how much should be invested for a comfortable retirement, are some of the types of questions solved in this module.

Students are introduced to timelines that allow us to visually represent complex financial problems spread out over time. These timelines are then used to solve the financial problems using a prescribed financial calculator.

*Home department: Statistics and Actuarial Science*

## **21008 Transport Economics**

### **214 (16) Introduction to transport economics (3L)**

Role and functions of transport. Transportation, logistics and technology. The demand for transportation. Laws of variable proportions and scale. Cost economies and traceability. Modal supply characteristics. Transportation, investment and generalised cost. Location and land settlement. Transport and government policy.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Economics 114*
- *Economics 144*

*Home department: Logistics*

## **64007 University Practice in the Natural Sciences**

### **176 (8) University practice in the natural sciences (3L)**

Study load: 78 lectures in total, presented as 5L per week in the first semester and 1L per week in the second semester.

For students in the BSc (extended curriculum programmes). It is followed up during the second semester in the different subject-specific modules of Mathematics 176, Physics 176, Chemistry 176 and Biology 146. Basic terminology and concepts are addressed. Study and life skills receive attention. The natural sciences and specifically the subjects taken by the students serve as a context.

## **50997 Wine Biotechnology**

### **771 (30) Research methodology for grapevine and wine biotechnology**

Project planning, communication and writing skills; oral presentation of research project proposal; carrying out experimental research; data processing; written reporting on and oral presentation of research results.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **772 (20) Techniques in grape and wine sciences**

General laboratory safety and etiquette, biological calculations; project planning and reporting; general microbiology techniques (growth kinetics and fermentation); general molecular biology techniques (nucleic acid extraction and manipulation, polymerase chain reaction FF(PCR), agarose gel electrophoresis, cloning of DNA fragments, transformation techniques, DNA sequencing, protein isolation and analysis, introduction to bioinformatics); chemical analyses (liquid and gas chromatography, spectroscopy, enzymatic assays); general statistical analyses. Small-scale winemaking and analyses of wine, including sensory evaluation.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **773 (20) Wine-related microbes**

An introduction to the microorganisms occurring on the grapes, in grape juice and throughout the wine-making process, as well as their role (beneficial or detrimental) during this process. Biotechnology of wine yeasts and bacteria, including genetic aspects and targets for improvement.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **774 (20) Grapevine biology and biotechnology**

A concise introduction to the vegetative and reproductive structures of the grapevine and their development in interaction with the environment, as well as important viticultural concepts. A critical evaluation of a selection of latest research results, challenges and opportunities in the field of grapevine molecular biology and biotechnology.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

## **775 (10) Seminar**

Write a literature review on a relevant subject and do an oral presentation on the subject.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

## **776 (20) Chemistry and biochemistry of grapes and wine**

Plant growth regulators, major compounds in grapes, both volatile and non-volatile, grape ripening and compound accumulation in grape berries during the season. Major and minor chemical compounds in musts and wines, both volatile and non-volatile. Role of enzymes, tannins and additives in winemaking. Concepts and processes related to colour stability, macromolecular composition and sensory (taste and aroma) of different types of wines. The role and processes involved in wine ageing, oxidation processes. Analytical methods (chromatography, spectroscopy, spectrometry) and data analysis tools to evaluate grape and wine chemical and biochemical composition.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

## **13890 Wine Sciences**

### **214 (16) Introduction to wine industry (3L, 3P)**

The South African wine industry, consumers and products in context. Wine-of-Origin system, legislation and regulations, including labelling. Workplace health and safety in a winemaking context. Principles of sustainable wine production.

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **244 (16) Wine styles and sensory evaluation (3L, 3P)**

Wine evaluation systems, working in a formal tasting environment, effective communication to wine consumers in tasting rooms (service-learning). Wine components, wine scoring, descriptive analysis and the appropriateness of different sensory tests. Consumer preferences and issues. Traditional and non-traditional wine markets. Wine styles: importance in winemaking, and the process of wine production for various styles, including legislation around permissible additives. Brandy, sparkling, sherry and other production systems.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Wine Sciences 214*

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **314 (16) Grape processing and wine production (3L, 3P)**

Principles and practices of winemaking will be discussed and implemented producing different wine styles. Harvesting of the grapes; grape processing; use of different winemaking technologies; addition of processing agents; management of alcoholic and malolactic fermentations (MLF); MLF and its impact on wine quality; handling of problem fermentations.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Grapevine and Wine Sciences 212*
- *Wine Sciences 244*

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **344 (16) Wine stabilization, clarification, bottling and faults (3L, 3P)**

Principles and techniques for wine clarification, stabilisation and bottling will be discussed. Wine faults: prevention, origins and treatments. Wine tasting and analyses.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Wine Sciences 314*

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*

### **446 (24) Biochemistry of wine flavours (3L, 3T, 3P)**

Integrated and comprehensive study of fermentation-derived aroma compound production. The role of phenolics, polysaccharides, ageing, oxidation and wood-derived compounds in wine.

*Prerequisite modules:*

- *Wine Sciences 314*
- *Economics 344*

*Home department: Viticulture and Oenology*



## **57584 Wood Product Science**

### **224 (16) Dendrology and wood anatomy (3L, 3P)**

Introduction to plant taxonomy and commercially important tree genera; introduction to tree growth; macroscopic and microscopic anatomy and identification of types of woods; descriptions of cell wall ultrastructure, wood variability; wood quality.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **234 (16) Mechanics of wood products (3L, 3P)**

Analysis of beams, columns and axially loaded elements. Elastic behaviour and deformation of materials. Design and scaling. Timber as a structural material: Influence of moisture, long-term load, pressure treatment, load sharing. Strength grading of timber. The SABS timber design code.

*Prerequisite module:*

- *Strength of Materials 143*

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **244 (16) Wood chemistry (2L, 4P)**

Introduction to the chemistry relating to wood and wood products. Chemical composition (lignin, cellulose, hemicelluloses, extractives) and chemical utilisation of wood. Biological degradation of lignocellulosics.

Practicals are offered over several consecutive days as block practicals together with wood physics.

*Corequisite modules:*

- *Engineering Chemistry 123 OR Chemistry 144*

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **255 (4) Introduction to woodwork and workshop practice (1P)**

One week of practical work during the June or September holidays of the second year. Orientation to wood workshop practices, health and safety in the workshop, general workshop operations, machine operation and maintenance, use of hand tools, finishing of wooden products.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **264 (16) Wood physics and drying (2L, 4P)**

The physics of water in and around wood, moisture content, the concept of humidity, equilibrium moisture content density, sorption, shrinkage and swelling of wood; electrical, thermal and acoustical properties of wood. The why and how of wood drying, description of various methods, kiln types and schedules, drying defects.

Practicals are offered over several consecutive days as block practicals together with wood physics.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **346 (4) Introduction to CNC machine programming and use (1P)**

One week of practical work during the June or September holidays of the third year. Orientation to the use of CNC machines, health and safety aspects related to the use of such machines, maintenance of machines, CNC design, programming and manufacturing.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **335 (16) Wood adhesives and composite products (3L, 3P)**

Adhesion; types and properties of adhesives. The manufacturing of particleboard, veneer, plywood, fibreboard, wood cement and wood plastic composites, laminated wood and paper. Processing methods, physical and chemical properties of the products and analysis methods.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **414 (16) Wood products manufacturing I (3L, 3P)**

Basic wood products manufacturing with a focus on the primary manufacturing sector. Background to and economics of wood products manufacturing. Production of solid wood (industrial or furniture wood) in sawmills and further processing in secondary industries. Processing equipment; introduction to computer-based equipment.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*



#### **426 (4) Introduction to wood finishing practices (1P)**

One week of practical work during the January holidays of the fourth year. Orientation to the use of modern finishing equipment, health and safety aspects related to the use of such equipment, maintenance of equipment, and manufacturing practices.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **434 (16) Wood degradation and preservation (3L, 3P)**

Degradation due to fungi, insects and weathering; Composition and properties of various surface finishes, including preservatives, surface preparation and coating application. Surface characterisation and performance testing, environmental aspects.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **444 (12) Bio-energy (2L, 2P)**

Renewable energy sources, conversion of biomass into energy, biorefinery, processing methods, determination of calorific values and other properties, comparison of different biofuels, environmental aspects, emissions and emissions reduction, introduction to life cycle analysis for biofuels and bio-energy.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **781 (32) Wood properties and quality**

Tree growth; bulk, macroscopic, cellular, cell wall, ultra-structural and molecular properties of wood; variability between trees and within a tree of the most important anatomical, physical and chemical properties; wood quality. Testing and analysis to evaluate wood quality.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **782 (32) Primary wood processing**

The primary sawmill processing of logs into solid wood products. Theory and practices of wood drying. Manufacture and properties of composite products, including the adhesion process. Processing variables, economy and system optimisation.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **783 (32) Bio-energy**

Conversion of wood into energy, processing methods, determination of calorific values and other properties, comparison of different biofuels, harvesting and storage problems, different conversion methods, processing problems, environmental aspects, emissions. Consolidation of theoretical knowledge in a realistic case study based on South African biofuels.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

#### **784 (24) Wood products science project**

Wood Products Science research project with a focus on any aspect of materials science, product development or manufacturing; research design and methods, data capture and analysis, formulation of results and conclusions.

*Home department: Forest and Wood Science*

### **13348 Work-integrated Learning**

#### **882 (20) Work-integrated learning**

Teams of students with different disciplinary and preferably cultural backgrounds will carry out a design type project for a client. This client may be a company with activities related to agriculture in its widest sense (e.g. seed, fertilizer, machinery, food processing), a (research) institute, an NGO, or a consultancy firm. The project must have a direct relationship with the theme "sustainable agriculture", the suitability of projects to be determined by the SU course coordinator. It could be design of new technologies, but it could also be a policy paper, a business plan, a communication plan or the draft of a plan for an integrated research programme. These project plans must address a realistic, existing problem or area of interest for the commissioner; plans should not be developed as a teaching exercise.

The ultimate goal is for teams to reach an interdisciplinary synthesis of the information they have compiled and translate this into advice on future actions for their client.

#### **Learning outcomes**

At the end of the module the student is expected to be able to:

- determine, with a team and in close interaction with a client, the goals of a project and formulate

tasks and a project plan on the basis of their disciplinary knowledge and general academic skills and attitude

- defend and sell their viewpoints and conclusions in a professional and representative way and academically correct
- contribute at an academic level to the execution of an interdisciplinary project both in terms of process and content related to their own disciplinary training by gathering, selecting and analysing information and integrating this into project deliverables
- implement reflective learning by an assessment of their personal functioning in and contribution to a professional team and reflection on this in writing and during an assessment interview
- assess the contribution of other team members and other stakeholders on team functioning and execution of project tasks and appropriately reflect on these and give feedback verbally and in writing.

*Home department: Animal Sciences*

# Research and service bodies

In this chapter the research and service bodies that reside in the Faculty of AgriSciences are presented.

## 1. The South African Grape and Wine Research Institute (SAGWRI) at Stellenbosch University

### History

The South African Grape and Wine Sciences Research Institute (SAGWRI) was established at Stellenbosch University at the end of 2019 as a Type 2 research institute (according to the classification of centres, institutes and schools (CIS) at the University). The Institute's founding department is the Department of Viticulture and Oenology in the Faculty of AgriSciences and operates as a cross-faculty research institute that provides postgraduate training and research. From 2020 onwards, the SAGWRI will incorporate all research activities and training programmes of the former Institute for Wine Biotechnology (IWBT), the Department of Viticulture and Oenology, and also host the DST/NRF SARCHI for Integrated Wine Science.

### Objectives

The Institute supports a focused and fully integrated research and innovation approach to the grapevine and wine sciences. The Institute will advance postgraduate studies and research in grape and wine sciences at Stellenbosch University and establish its position as a leading national, African and international scientific unit.

The structure of the new Institute is designed to support a trans approach (trans-university and trans-disciplinary) by structurally supporting close associations between all grape and wine-interested departments and researchers through the establishment of associate memberships for individual academics with grape and wine-related projects. The Institute has close ties with the South African table and wine grape industries, as well as associated industry partners.

Postgraduate students and postdoctoral fellows conduct research at the SAGWRI in several core disciplines that include viticulture, oenology, biotechnology, analytical chemistry of grape and wine matrices, spectroscopy, sensory and consumer sciences and data science. Several research themes are covered and include:

- Grapevine Biology, Biotechnology and Improvement
- Grapevine x Environment x Management Interactions
- Digital Viticulture
- Wine Production and Analytics
- Biology and Biotechnology of Wine Microorganisms
- Microbial Resources, Ecology and Evolution
- Applied Teaching and Learning Research

### Contact details

For more information, visit <https://sagwri.sun.ac.za/> or contact Prof MA Vivier at [mav@sun.ac.za](mailto:mav@sun.ac.za) or 021 808 3773.

## 2. Institute for Plant Breeding and Biotechnology (IPBB)

### History

The Institute for Plant Breeding and Biotechnology (IPBB) was founded at Stellenbosch University in 1998, in collaboration with the South African Sugarcane Research Institute. The IPBB is part of the Department of Genetics in the Faculty of AgriSciences, where it currently functions as an independent unit.

The IPB was established under the leadership of Dr Frikkie Botha. In 2004 Prof Jens Kossmann took over and was appointed director, a position that he currently still occupies. Under Prof Kossmann the IPBB functions as a multicultural and interdisciplinary team of researchers and postgraduate students who focus on research opportunities in plant biotechnology. Fundamental research forms the core of the IPBB's activities, but every project has some long-term application.

### Objectives

The IPBB specialises in the characterising and manipulation of primary carbon metabolism in plants. The ultimate goal is to manipulate the relevant metabolic pathways to either improve yield and/or quality, or to produce novel, high-value products in plants. Some projects are aimed at the genetic manipulation of carbon

partitioning within plant organs, such as sugarcane culms, grape berries and potato tubers.

The Institute's approach is to first get a better understanding of the control of carbohydrate metabolism in these important sink tissues and then to genetically manipulate apparent key enzymes to investigate the effect of these modifications on metabolic flux. In addition to the work on the partitioning of endogenous compounds, the Institute also focus on the improvement of these compounds and the introduction of completely new ones. As part of several international collaborative projects, the IPB has, for example, developed transgenic plants that produce novel, high-value products, i.e. nutraceuticals and pharmaceuticals or biopolymers for industrial application. The IPBB also tries to understand plant growth in relation to abiotic stress factors with the aim of breeding or engineering plants that are more productive with less input.

## Contact details

The Institute is situated on the main campus of Stellenbosch University, in the heart of the Winelands region in the Western Cape province of South Africa.

For more information, visit <https://genetics.sun.ac.za/institute-of-plant-biotechnology/> or contact Dr S Peters at [swpeters@sun.ac.za](mailto:swpeters@sun.ac.za) or 021 808 3836.

## 3. Experimental Farms

The University owns two experimental farms (Welgevallen and Mariendahl) that are used mainly for the training of undergraduate students and for research projects of postgraduate students and academic staff of the Faculty of AgriSciences. The farms serve in the first place as field laboratories where research projects are conducted under highly controlled conditions. However, the farms are managed in a way that simulates the practical conditions on commercial farms in the agricultural industry. Where feasible, the spare capacity of the experimental farms is utilised for commercial production in order to manage these farms as far as possible towards self-sufficiency.

### 3.1 Welgevallen

Welgevallen was purchased in 1917 at the founding of the Faculty, specifically because it was a condition that an experimental farm be within walking distance of the campus. Its original size was 278 ha, of which only 120 ha remain available. Welgevallen is used mainly by the departments of the Faculty of AgriSciences.

The entire Department of Agronomy is situated at Welgevallen, where it has several laboratories, controlled-climate growth chambers and plastic tunnels, as well as small experimental plots.

The Department of Horticulture has at its disposal well-established deciduous fruit and soft citrus orchards, while the Department of Viticulture and Oenology has well-established vineyards producing grapes of the highest quality. A wine cellar equipped with the latest technology where wine is made on a semi-commercial scale has been erected on the banks of the Eerste River.

The Department of Animal Sciences has at its disposal excellent facilities where mainly sexual physiology studies are carried out. This Department maintains a highly productive Friesian herd as well as a sheep flock of stud quality used for practical training, but also available for research purposes. This Department furthermore has at its disposal well-equipped feeding sheds and stables where intensive nutritional research on small and large ruminants can be carried out.

Other departments that are also active on the experimental farm are Genetics, Soil Science and Forest and Wood Science. The Department of Genetics annually plants 8 000 to 13 000 segregating populations and pure lines from the wheat and triticale breeding programmes under dryland conditions at Welgevallen and Mariendahl for disease evaluation and selection. The Department utilises several greenhouses and growth chambers for making crosses, doing seedling disease typing and the execution of an extensive cross-breeding programme. The latter programme focuses on producing species hybrids and secondary hybrid derivatives in an attempt to transfer disease and salt tolerance genes from the wild species to the cultivated cereals. Even departments from other faculties, such as the Department of Botany and Zoology, make use of the facilities on the farm.

## Contact details

For more information, contact the Experimental Farm Manager, Mr W van Kerwel, at 021 808 4870.

### 3.2 Mariendahl

Mariendahl (375 ha) adjoins the Elsenburg Experimental Farm about 14km outside Stellenbosch. It is used mainly by the Department of Animal Sciences. The University's excellent facilities for poultry and pig research are located at Mariendahl. The Department of Animal Sciences also has a Simmentaler herd, as well as a Dohne Merino and South African Mutton Merino flock, at its disposal. These breeds are of the highest quality and well known in the industry. The facilities are used for the training of students as well as for research for the industry.

## Contact details

For more information, contact the Experimental Farm Manager, Mr J Morris, at 021 884 4460.

# Alphabetical subject list

Agricultural Economics.....	94
Agriculture-nutrition Linkages .....	99
Agronomy .....	99
Agronomy Science Project.....	102
Animal Anatomy and Physiology.....	102
Animal Breeding and Genetics I .....	103
Animal Breeding and Genetics II.....	103
Animal Health .....	103
Animal Management Science.....	104
Animal Nutrition Science .....	104
Animal Physiology.....	105
Animal Product Science.....	106
Animal Production.....	106
Animal Production Physiology .....	106
Animal Science.....	106
Applied Chemistry .....	107
Applied Mathematics.....	107
Applied Mathematics B.....	107
Applied Plant Physiology .....	108
Aquaculture.....	109
Aquaculture Management Science .....	110
Assessing Food Security.....	110
Biochemistry .....	110
Biodiversity and Ecology .....	111
Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services.....	114
Biology.....	114
Biometry.....	115
Biotechnology .....	115
Business Management.....	116
Chemistry .....	116
Computer Programming.....	119
Computer Science .....	119
Computer Skills .....	120
Conceptualising Food Systems .....	121
Conservation Ecology .....	121
Crop Production.....	123
Crop Protection .....	123
Crops for Extensive Production Systems .....	123
Data Science.....	124
Data Science and Computational Thinking.....	125
Data Science Research in Statistical Genetics .....	125
Economics.....	125
Economics of Sustainable Agriculture (Including Farm Management).....	128
Engineering Chemistry .....	128
Engineering Drawings.....	128
Engineering Mathematics.....	129
Engineering Statistics .....	129
Entomology .....	130
Entrepreneurship and Innovation Management.....	130
Financial Accounting.....	131

Financial Management.....	131
Food and Nutrition Policies.....	133
Food Chains and Consumers.....	132
Food Process Engineering.....	132
Food Processing & Preservation.....	133
Food Safety, Hazards & Risks.....	133
Food Science.....	133
Food Security Project Analysis.....	136
Forest Science.....	136
Functional Foods and Alternative Proteins.....	138
Genetic Data Analysis.....	139
Genetics.....	139
Genomics.....	140
Geo-Environmental Science.....	141
Geographical Information Technology.....	141
Grapevine and Wine Sciences.....	143
Grapevine Sciences.....	141
Honours Project in Genetics.....	144
Horticultural Science.....	144
Human and Animal Genetics.....	146
Human Economic Development.....	146
Industrial Ergonomics.....	146
Industrial Programming.....	146
Industrial Psychology (Special).....	147
Integrated Plant Metabolism.....	147
Intercultural Communication (Eng).....	147
Introduction to Animal Nutrition.....	147
Introduction to Economics.....	147
Introduction to Epidemiology.....	147
Introduction to Statistical Learning.....	148
Introduction to Systems Thinking.....	148
Introduction to Transport and Logistics Systems.....	148
Investment Management.....	148
Logistics and Supply Chain Management.....	150
Macro- & Micronutrients & Health.....	151
Management Accounting.....	152
Marketing Management.....	152
Mathematics.....	153, 154
Mathematics (Bio).....	154
Mathematics for EMS.....	154
Microbiology.....	155
Nematology.....	156
Operations Research (Eng).....	156
Physics.....	157
Physics (Bio).....	156
Physiological and Ecological Principles of Natural Pasture Management.....	157
Plant Genetics and Crop Improvement.....	157
Plant Pathology.....	157
Plant Physiology.....	159
Plant Production and Plant Protection.....	159
Probability Theory and Statistics.....	159
Production Management.....	160
Quality Assurance.....	160

Quality Management .....	160
Quantitative Analysis of Land Use Systems.....	160
Research Assignment .....	161
Research in Plant Biotechnology.....	161
Research Thesis (Sustainable Agriculture).....	161
Scientific and Proposal Writing .....	161
Scientific Communication Skills.....	162
Sociology .....	162
Sociology of Sustainable Agriculture .....	162
Soil Science .....	162
Statistics .....	164
Strategic Management.....	165
Strength of Materials.....	166
Sustainability Transitions .....	166
Sustainable Animal Production .....	166
Sustainable Soil Management.....	167
Systems Analysis and Simulation.....	167
Theory of Interest .....	167
Transport Economics.....	168
University Practice in the Natural Sciences.....	168
Wine Biotechnology .....	168
Wine Sciences.....	169
Wood Product Science .....	170
Work-integrated Learning.....	171